

# HANDBOOK



PEUGEOT 2008



PEUGEOT



## Access to the Handbook



From the appropriate Store, download the **Scan MyPeugeot APP** smartphone application.

Then select:

- the vehicle,
- the issue period corresponding to the date of 1<sup>st</sup> registration of your vehicle.

Download the content of the vehicle's **Handbook**.



The **Handbook** is available on the PEUGEOT website, in the "MY PEUGEOT" section or at the following address:  
<http://public.servicebox.peugeot.com/APddb/>

Select:

- the language,
- the vehicle, its body style,
- the issue period of your handbook corresponding to the date of 1<sup>st</sup> registration of your vehicle.



Access to the **Handbook**.



This symbol indicates the latest information available.

# Welcome

Thank you for choosing a Peugeot 2008.

This document presents the information and recommendations required for you to be able to explore your vehicle in complete safety.

Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are given as indications only. Automobiles PEUGEOT reserves the right to modify the technical data, equipment and accessories without having to update this edition of the guide.

If ownership of your vehicle is transferred, please ensure this **Handbook** is passed on to the new owner.

In this document you will find all of the instructions and recommendations on use that will allow you to enjoy your vehicle to the fullest. It is strongly recommended that you familiarise yourself with it as well as the Warranty and Maintenance Record which will provide you with information about warranties, servicing and roadside assistance associated with your vehicle.

## Key



Safety warning



Additional information



Contributes to the protection of the environment



Left-hand drive vehicle



Right-hand drive vehicle

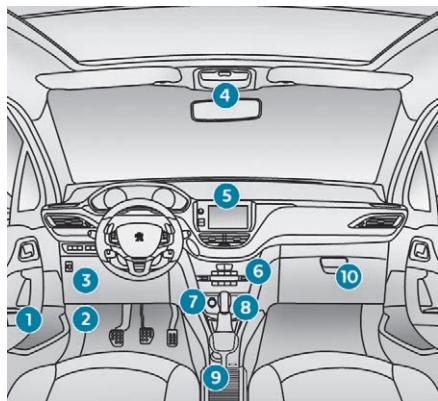
	Overview	
Instruments and controls		4
Eco-driving		■
	Access	2
	Remote control key	34
	Doors	36
	Back-up procedures	37
	Locking/Unlocking from the inside	38
	Boot	39
	Alarm	39
	Electric windows	41
	Lighting and visibility	4
	Lighting control stalk	60
	Direction indicators	61
	LED lamps	62
	Daytime running lamps	62
	Automatic headlamp illumination	63
	Manual guide-me-home lighting	63
	Cornering lighting	64
	Headlamp beam height adjustment	64
	Wiper control stalk	65
	Changing a wiper blade	67
	Instruments	1
Instrument panels		8
Warning and indicator lamps		9
Indicators		19
Lighting dimmer		24
Distance recorders		25
Trip computer		25
Touch screen		27
Date and time adjustment		33
	Ease of use and comfort	3
	PEUGEOT i-Cockpit	43
	Steering wheel adjustment	43
	Mirrors	43
	Front seats	44
	Rear seats	46
	Ventilation	47
	Heating	49
	Manual air conditioning	49
	Dual-zone automatic air conditioning	50
	Recirculation of the interior air	52
	Front demist – defrost	52
	Rear screen demist – defrost	53
	Interior fittings	53
	Boot fittings	56
	Courtesy lamps	58
	Interior ambient lighting	58
	Instrument panel ambient lighting	59
	Panoramic glass sunroof	59
	Safety	5
	General safety recommendations	68
	Hazard warning lamps	68
	Horn	69
	Emergency or assistance call	69
	Electronic stability control (ESC)	71
	Grip control	73
	Seat belts	74
	Airbags	76
	Child seats	79
	Deactivating the front passenger airbag	80
	ISOFIX mountings and child seats	86
	Child lock	91

Driving	<b>6</b>	Practical information	<b>7</b>	Technical data	<b>9</b>
Driving recommendations	92	Compatibility of fuels	122	Engine technical data and towed loads	163
Starting/Switching off the engine	93	Fuel tank	123	Petrol engines and towed loads	164
Parking brake	95	Misfuel prevention (Diesel)	124	Diesel engines and towed loads	166
5-speed manual gearbox	96	Towing device	124	Dimensions	168
6-speed manual gearbox	96	Towing device with quickly detachable towball	125	Identification markings	168
Electronic gearbox (ETG6)	97	Snow chains	128		
Automatic gearbox (EAT6)	99	Fitting roof bars	129		
Gear shift indicator	102	Energy economy mode	130	Audio equipment and telematics	168
Hill start assist	103	Load reduction mode	130	PEUGEOT Connect Radio	168
Stop & Start	104	Advice on care and maintenance	130	PEUGEOT Connect Nav	168
Under-inflation detection	106	Bonnet	130		
Speed limiter	108	Petrol engines	131		
Cruise control	110	Diesel engines	131		
Memorising speeds	111	Checking levels	132		
Active City Brake	112	Checks	134		
Parking sensors	114	AdBlue® (BlueHDI engines)	136		
Reversing camera	116				
Park Assist	116				
		In the event of a breakdown	<b>8</b>	Alphabetical index	
		Running out of fuel (Diesel)	140		
		Temporary puncture repair kit	140		
		Spare wheel	144		
		Changing a bulb	149		
		Changing a fuse	152		
		12 V battery	157		
		Towing	161		



 [bit.ly/helpPSA](http://bit.ly/helpPSA)

## Instruments and controls



<b>1</b>	Door mirrors Electric windows
<b>2</b>	Bonnet release
<b>3</b>	Dashboard fuses
<b>4</b>	Rear view mirror Courtesy lamp Interior ambient lighting Emergency or assistance call Active City Brake
<b>5</b>	Touch screen with PEUGEOT Connect Radio or PEUGEOT Connect Nav Setting the date and time
<b>6</b>	Ventilation Heating Manual air conditioning Automatic air conditioning Front demisting/defrosting Rear screen demisting/defrosting
<b>7</b>	USB port/Jack socket* 12 V socket
<b>8</b>	Manual gearbox Electronic gearbox Automatic gearbox Gear shift indicator
<b>9</b>	Grip control Panoramic glass roof blind Parking brake
<b>10</b>	Glove box Deactivating the front passenger airbag Glove box fuses

\* Depending on version.

## Steering mounted controls



<b>1</b>	Lighting control stalk Direction indicators
<b>2</b>	Steering mounted controls for the touch screen: volume, source change
<b>3</b>	Cruise control Speed limiter Memorising speeds
<b>4</b>	"-" Changing down gears (with an electronic gearbox)

<b>5</b>	Steering wheel adjustment Horn
<b>6</b>	Wiper control stalk Trip computer
<b>7</b>	Steering mounted controls for the touch screen
<b>8</b>	"+" Changing up gears (with an electronic gearbox)

## Side switch panel

(Depending on version)



<b>P</b>	Activation of Park Assist
<b>ECO OFF</b>	Deactivation of Stop & Start



Deactivation of the interior volumetric monitoring



Activation of the electric child lock



Headlamp beam height adjustment

## Central switch panel



Central locking



Hazard warning lamps

# Eco-driving

Eco-driving is a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.

## Optimise the use of your gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up without waiting. During acceleration, change up early.

With an automatic or electronic gearbox, give preference to automatic mode and avoid pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

The gear shift indicator invites you to engage the most suitable gear: as soon as the indication is displayed in the instrument panel, follow it straight away.

For vehicles fitted with an electronic or automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

## Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal, and press the accelerator progressively. These practices contribute towards a reduction in fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions and also help reduce the background traffic noise.

If your vehicle has cruise control, make use of the system at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

## Control the use of your electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.

Above 31 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.

Consider using equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof blind, window blinds, etc.).

Unless it has automatic regulation, switch off the air conditioning as soon as the desired temperature has been reached.

Switch off the demisting and defrosting controls, if not automatic.

Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.

Switch off the headlamps and front foglamps when the ambient light level does not require their use.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, if you avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game, etc.), you will contribute towards limiting the consumption of electrical energy, and so of fuel.

Disconnect your portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

## Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items in the bottom of the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.

Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and reduce wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer, etc). Preferably, use a roof box.

Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit your summer tyres.

## Observe the recommendations on maintenance

Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold, referring to the label in the door aperture, driver's side.

Carry out this check in particular:

- before a long journey,
- at each change of season,
- after a long period out of use.

Do not forget the spare wheel and the tyres on any trailer or caravan.

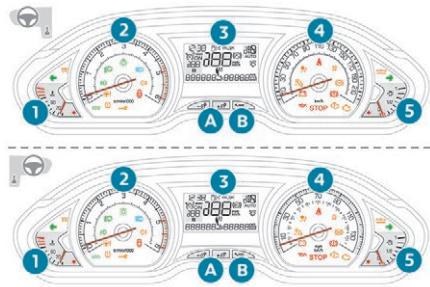
Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter, cabin filter, etc.) and observe the schedule of operations in the manufacturer's service schedule.

With a BlueHDI Diesel engine, if the SCR system is faulty, your vehicle becomes polluting. Visit a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to make your vehicle's level of nitrogen oxide emissions compliant to the standard.

When filling the tank, do not continue after the 3<sup>rd</sup> cut-off of the nozzle to avoid overflow.

At the wheel of your new vehicle, it is only after the first 1,900 miles (3,000 kilometres) that you will see the fuel consumption settle down to a consistent average.

## LCD instrument panel



### Dials

1. Engine coolant temperature gauge.
2. Rev counter (x 1,000 rpm), graduation depends on the engine (petrol or Diesel).
3. Display screen.
4. Analogue speedometer (mph or km/h).
5. Fuel gauge.

## Control buttons

- General lighting dimmer.
- Servicing reminder.  
Reset the function selected (service indicator or trip recorder).  
Adjust the time.  
Switch the digital speedometer on and off.

- Cruise control or speed limiter settings.
- Service indicator, then total distance recorder (miles or km).  
These functions are displayed successively on switching on the ignition.
- Trip distance recorder (miles or km).

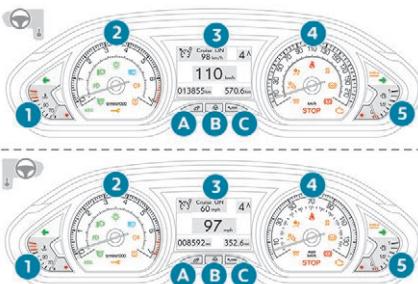
\* Depending on version.

## Display screen



1. Engine oil level indicator\*.
2. Gear shift indicator with a manual gearbox.  
Selector position and gear with an electronic or automatic gearbox.
3. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h).  
This function can be deactivated by pressing and holding button B.

## Matrix instrument panel



### Dials

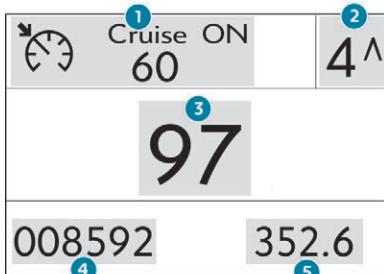
1. Engine coolant temperature gauge.
2. Rev counter (x 1,000 rpm), graduation depends on the engine (petrol or Diesel).
3. Display screen.

4. Analogue speedometer (mph or km/h).
5. Fuel gauge.

## Control buttons

- A. General lighting dimmer.
- B. Instrument panel mood lighting.
- C. Servicing reminder.  
Reset the function selected (service indicator or trip recorder).

## Display screen



1. Cruise control or speed limiter settings.
2. Gear shift indicator with a manual gearbox.  
Selector position and gear with an electronic or automatic gearbox.
3. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h).

4. Service indicator, then total distance recorder (miles or km).  
These functions are displayed successively on switching on the ignition.
5. Trip distance recorder (miles or km).

## Warning and indicator lamps

Displayed as symbols, visual indicators which inform the driver of the occurrence of a malfunction (warning lamps) or of the operating status of a system (operation or deactivation indicator lamps). Certain lamps light up in two ways (fixed or flashing) and/or in several colours.

### Associated warnings

The illumination of a lamp may be accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message displayed in a screen.

Relating the type of alert to the operating status of the vehicle allows you to determine whether the situation is normal or a fault has occurred: refer to the description of each lamp for further information.

## When the ignition is switched on

Certain red or orange warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. These warning lamps should go off as soon as the engine is started.

## Persistent warning lamp

When the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven, the illumination of a red or orange warning lamp indicates a fault that needs further investigation, using any associated message and the description of the warning lamp in the documentation.

## Where a warning lamp remains lit

The references (1), (2) and (3) in the warning and indicator lamp description indicate whether you should contact a qualified professional in addition to the immediate recommended actions.

**(1): You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so** and switch off the ignition.

**(2):** Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

**(3):** Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## List of warning and indicator lamps

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
<b>Red warning/indicator lamps</b>			
 <b>STOP</b>	Fixed, associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.	Indicates a serious fault with the engine, braking system, power steering or a major electrical fault.	Carry out (1) and then (2).
 +  <b>STOP</b>	Fixed.	A major engine fault has been detected.	Carry out (1) and then (2).
 <b>Maximum engine coolant temperature</b>	Fixed, with the needle in the red zone.	The temperature of the cooling system is too high.	Carry out (1), then wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up to the required level, if necessary. If the problem persists, carry out (2).
 <b>Engine oil pressure</b>	Fixed.	There is a fault with the engine lubrication system.	Carry out (1) and then (2).
 <b>Battery charge</b>	Fixed.	The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, etc.).	Clean and retighten the terminals. If the warning lamp does not go off when the engine is started, carry out (2).

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	Door(s) open	Fixed, associated with a message identifying the door.	If one of the doors or the tailgate is not fully closed (speed below 6 mph [10 km/h]).	
		Fixed, associated with a message identifying the door, together with an audible signal.	If one of the doors or the tailgate is not fully closed (speed above 6 mph [10 km/h]).	
	Seat belt not fastened/unfastened	Fixed or flashing accompanied by an audible signal.	A seat belt has not been fastened or has been unfastened.	
	Parking brake	Fixed.	The parking brake is applied or not properly released.	
	Brakes	Fixed.	The brake fluid level has dropped significantly.	Carry out (1), then top up with brake fluid that complies with the manufacturer's recommendations. If the problem persists, carry out (2).
		Fixed.	The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system is faulty.	Carry out (1) and then (2).

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
<b>Orange warning/indicator lamps</b>			
	Service	Temporarily on, accompanied by the display of a message.	<p>One or more minor faults have been detected for which there is no specific warning lamp.</p> <p>Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the instrument panel.</p> <p>You can deal with certain anomalies yourself, for example an open door or the start of saturation of the particle filter.</p> <p>For any other problems, such as a fault with the tyre under-inflation detection system, carry out (3).</p>
		Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.	<p>One or more major faults have been detected for which there is no specific warning lamp.</p> <p>Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the instrument panel, then carry out (3).</p>
  	Service warning lamp fixed and service spanner flashing then fixed.	Service is overdue.	<p>Only with BlueHDi Diesel versions.</p> <p>Your vehicle must be serviced as soon as possible.</p>

**(1): You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so** and switch off the ignition.

**(2): Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.**

**(3): Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.**

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations	
	<b>Diesel engine pre-heating</b>	Temporarily on.	When switching on the ignition, if the weather conditions and the engine temperature make it necessary.	Wait until the warning lamp goes off before starting. If the engine does not start, switch the ignition off and then on, wait until the warning lamp goes off again, then start the engine.	
	<b>Foot on the clutch</b>	Fixed.	Stop & Start: the change to START mode is rejected because the clutch pedal is not fully depressed.	Fully depress the clutch pedal.	
	<b>Foot on the brake</b>	Fixed.	Omission or insufficient pressure on the brake pedal.	With an automatic gearbox, with the engine running, before releasing the parking brake, to move out of position <b>P</b> . With an electronic gearbox, selector in position <b>N</b> , to start the engine.	
	<b>Foot on the brake</b>	Flashing.	With an electronic gearbox, the clutch will overheat if you hold the vehicle on a slope using the accelerator for too long.	Use the brake pedal and/or the parking brake.	
	<b>Anti-lock braking system (ABS)</b>	Fixed.	The anti-lock braking system has a fault.	The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).	
	<b>Dynamic stability control (DSC)/Anti-slip regulation (ASR)</b>	Flashing.	The DSC/ASR adjustment is activated if there is a loss of grip or trajectory.		
		Fixed.	The DSC/ASR system has a fault.	Carry out (3).	

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations	
	<b>Power steering</b>	Fixed.	The power steering has a fault.	Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).
	<b>Low fuel level</b>	Fixed, with the needle in the red zone.	When it first comes on, <b>around 5 litres</b> of fuel remain in the tank.	Refuel without delay to avoid running out of fuel.
		Flashing, with the needle in the red zone.	Very little fuel remains in the tank.	<b>Never drive until completely empty</b> , this could damage the emissions and injection systems.
	<b>Airbags</b>	Fixed.	One of the airbags or seat belt pretensioners is faulty.	Carry out (3).
	<b>Front passenger airbag (OFF)</b>	Fixed.	The front passenger airbag is deactivated. The control is in the " <b>OFF</b> " position.	You can install a "rearward facing" child seat, unless there is a fault with the airbags (Airbags warning lamp on).
	<b>Under-inflation</b>	Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	The pressure in one or more tyres is too low.	Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible. Reinitialise the detection system after adjusting the pressure.
		Under-inflation warning lamp flashing then fixed and Service warning lamp fixed.	The system is faulty: tyre pressures are no longer monitored.	Under-inflation detection is no longer monitored. As soon as possible, check the pressure of the tyres and carry out (3).

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	Engine diagnostic system	Flashing.	The engine management system has a fault.	There is a risk that the catalytic converter will be destroyed. Carry out (2) <b>without fail</b> .
		Fixed.	The emissions control system has a fault.	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. Carry out (3) quickly.
	Engine diagnostic system	Fixed.	A minor engine fault has been detected.	Carry out (3).
	AdBlue® (with 1.6 BlueHDi Euro 6.1)	Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 1,500 and 375 miles (2400 and 600 km).	Top up the AdBlue® as soon as possible, or carry out (3).
		AdBlue® warning lamp flashing and Service warning lamp fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is less than 375 miles (600 km).	You <b>must</b> top up the AdBlue® to <b>avoid a breakdown</b> , or carry out (3).
		AdBlue® warning lamp flashing and Service warning lamp fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting prevention system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.	To restart the engine, top up the AdBlue®, or carry out (2). It is <b>essential</b> to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
 <b>AdBlue® (with 1.5 BlueHDI Euro 6.2)</b>	On for around 30 seconds when starting the vehicle, accompanied by a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 1,500 and 500 miles (2,400 and 800 km).	Top up the AdBlue®.
	Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 500 and 62 miles (800 and 100 km).	Top up the AdBlue® <b>as soon as possible</b> , or carry out (3).
	Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is less than 62 miles (100 km).	You <b>must</b> top up the AdBlue® to <b>avoid a breakdown</b> , or carry out (3).
	Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting prevention system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.	To restart the engine, top up the AdBlue®, or carry out (2). It is <b>essential</b> to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.

**(1): You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so** and switch off the ignition.

**(2):** Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

**(3):** Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations	
 +  	SCR emissions control system	Fixed when the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	A fault with the SCR emissions control system has been detected.	This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.	
		AdBlue® warning lamp flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the fixed Service and Engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	Depending on the message displayed, you can continue driving for up to 685 miles (1,100 km) before the engine starting prevention system is triggered.	Carry out (3) as soon as possible to <b>avoid starting being prevented</b> .	
		AdBlue® warning lamp flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the fixed Service and Engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	An engine immobiliser prevents the engine from restarting (over the authorised driving limit after confirmation of a fault with the emissions control system).	To start the engine, carry out (2).	
	Rear foglamp	Fixed.	The lamp is on.		

**(1): You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so** and switch off the ignition.

**(2): Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.**

**(3): Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.**

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations	
<b>Green warning/indicator lamps</b>				
 <b>ECO</b>	<b>Stop &amp; Start</b>	Fixed.	When the vehicle stops, the Stop & Start puts the engine into STOP mode.	
		Flashing temporarily.	STOP mode is momentarily unavailable or START mode is automatically triggered.	
 <b>AUTO</b>	<b>Automatic wiping</b>	Fixed.	Automatic windscreen wiping is activated.	
 <b>Front foglamps</b>	<b>Front foglamps</b>	Fixed.	The front foglamps are on.	
 <b>Direction indicators</b>	<b>Direction indicators</b>	Flashing with audible signal.	The direction indicators are on.	
 <b>Sidelamps</b>	<b>Sidelamps</b>	Fixed.	The lamps are on.	
 <b>Dipped beam headlamps</b>	<b>Dipped beam headlamps</b>	Fixed.	The lamps are on.	
<b>Blue warning/indicator lamps</b>				
 <b>Main beam headlamps</b>	<b>Main beam headlamps</b>	Fixed.	The lamps are on.	

## Indicators

### Service indicator

The service indicator is displayed in the instrument panel. Depending on the vehicle version:

- the distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due, or the distance travelled since it was due preceded by the sign "-".

- an alert message indicates the distance remaining, as well as the period before the next service is due or how long it is overdue.

**i** The distance indicated (in miles or kilometres) is calculated according to the distance covered and the time elapsed since the last service. The alert may be triggered close to a due date.

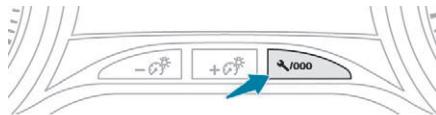
Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/ Observations
	<b>Service spanner</b>	Lights up temporarily when the ignition is switched on.	Between 620 and 1,860 miles (1,000 and 3,000 km) remain before the next service is due.	
		Fixed, when the ignition is switched on.	The service is due in less than 620 miles (1,000 km).	Have your vehicle serviced very soon.
	<b>Service spanner flashing</b>	Flashing then fixed, when the ignition is switched on. (For BlueHDi Diesel versions, associated with the Service warning lamp).	The servicing interval has been exceeded.	Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

### Resetting the service indicator

After each service, the service indicator must be reset to zero.

If you have carried out the service on your vehicle yourself:

- ☛ switch off the ignition,



- ☛ press and hold the trip distance recorder reset button,
- ☛ switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown,
- ☛ when the display indicates "=0", release the button; the spanner disappears.

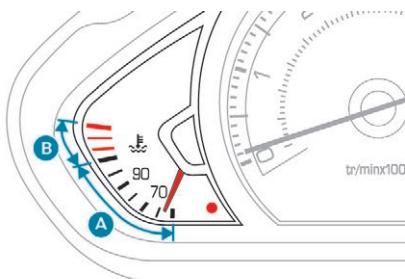
**i** If you have to disconnect the battery following this operation, lock the vehicle and wait at least 5 minutes for the reset to be registered.

## Retrieving the service information

You can access the service information at any time.

- Press the trip distance recorder reset button.  
The service information is displayed for a few seconds, then disappears.

## Coolant temperature gauge



With the engine running, when the needle is:

- in zone A, the temperature is correct,
- in zone B, the temperature is too high; the maximum temperature and the central **STOP** warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a warning message in the screen.

## You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.

Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

After driving for a few minutes, the temperature and pressure in the cooling system increase.

To top up to the required level:

- wait for the engine to cool,
- unscrew the cap slightly to allow the pressure to drop,
- when the pressure has dropped, remove the cap,
- top up the level to the "MAX" mark.

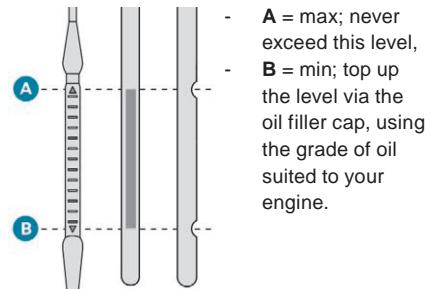
**!** Be aware of the risk of burns when topping up the cooling system. Do not fill above the maximum level (indicated on the reservoir).

## Oil level

### Dipstick

For more information on the engine compartment and the engine oil dipstick, refer to the corresponding section.

There are 2 marks on the dipstick:



## Checking

- Open the bonnet and secure it with the stay.
- Pull the dipstick out and wipe it with a clean cloth.
- Return the dipstick to its tube and then pull it out again to check the level against the mark.
- Return the dipstick to its tube.

## Oil level insufficient

- Identify the engine oil filler cap.
- Open the filler cap.
- Add engine oil without exceeding mark A.
- Close the filler cap.

! Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop. The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been stopped for more than 30 minutes.

Oil grade: the oil used must meet the specification given in the manufacturer's Warranty and Maintenance Record.

## Electronic oil level indicator

The check takes place a few seconds after switching on the ignition, with a message in the display or screen (depending on version). It is only valid if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for at least 30 minutes.

! It is normal to top up the oil level between services (or oil changes). PEUGEOT recommends that you check the oil level and top up, if necessary, every 3,000 miles (5,000 km).

### Level correct

OIL OK



### Level incorrect

OIL

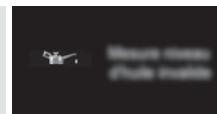


This is indicated by the flashing of "OIL" or by the display of a dedicated message in the instrument panel.

If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine.

### Fault

OIL\_\_



This is indicated by the flashing of "OIL\_\_" or by the display of a dedicated message in the instrument panel. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## AdBlue® range indicators

These range indicators are present only on BlueHDI Diesel versions.

Once the AdBlue® tank is on reserve or after detection of a fault with the SCR emissions control system, when the ignition is switched on, an indicator displays an estimate of the distance that can be covered, the range, before engine starting is prevented.

### In the event of the risk of non-starting related to a lack of AdBlue®

! The engine starting prevention system required by regulations is activated automatically once the AdBlue® tank is empty.

### Range greater than 1,500 miles (2,400 km)

When the ignition is switched on, no information on range is displayed automatically in the instrument panel.



Pressing this button temporarily displays the driving range.

**Remaining range between 1,500 and 500 miles  
(2,400 and 800 km) (1.5 BlueHDi Euro 6.2)**



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp comes on for about thirty seconds, accompanied by the display of a message ("Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.

The reserve level has been reached; it is recommended that you top up as soon as possible.

**Remaining range between 1,500 and 375 miles  
(2,400 and 600 km) (1.6 BlueHDi Euro 6.1)**



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message ("Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.

When driving, the message is displayed every 185 miles (300 km) until the level is topped up. The reserve level has been reached; it is recommended that you top up as soon as possible.

**Remaining range between 500 and 62 miles  
(800 and 100 km) (1.5 BlueHDi Euro 6.2)**



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal (1 beep) and the display of a message ("Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.

When driving, the audible signal and the message display are triggered every 62 miles (100 km) until the level is topped up.

It is essential to top up as soon as possible and before the tank is completely empty; otherwise it will not be possible to restart the engine after the next stop.

**Remaining range less than 375 miles  
(600 km) (1.6 BlueHDi Euro 6.1)**



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp flashes, accompanied by the permanent lighting of the Service warning lamp, an audible signal and the display of a message ("Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.

When driving, this message is displayed every 30 seconds until the AdBlue level has been topped up.

It is essential to top up as soon as possible and before the tank is completely empty; otherwise it will not be possible to restart the engine after the next stop.

**Remaining range less than 62 miles  
(100 km) (1.5 BlueHDi Euro 6.2)**



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal (1 beep) and the display of a message ("Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.

When driving, the audible signal and the message display are triggered every 6 miles (10 km) until the AdBlue tank is topped up. It is essential to top up as soon as possible and before the tank is completely empty; otherwise it will not be possible to restart the engine after the next stop.

**Breakdown related to a lack of AdBlue®**



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible".

The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting prevention system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.

- !** To be able to restart the engine, it is essential to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.
- i** For more information on **AdBlue® (BlueHDI engines)**, and, in particular, on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.

## In the event of a fault with the SCR emissions control system

- !** A system that prevents engine starting is activated automatically from 685 miles (1,100 km) after confirmation of a fault with the SCR emissions control system. Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

## In the event of the detection of a fault



These warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault".

The alert is triggered when driving when the fault is detected for the first time, then when switching on the ignition for subsequent journeys, while the fault persists.

- i** If it is a temporary fault, the alert disappears during the next journey, after self-diagnosis of the SCR system.

### During the permitted driving phase (between 685 and 0 miles (1,100 and 0 km))



If a fault with the SCR system is confirmed (after 31 miles (50 km) covered with the permanent display of the message signalling a fault), these warning lamps come on and the AdBlue warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g. "Emissions fault: Starting prevented in 185 miles") indicating the remaining range in miles or kilometres.

While driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds while the fault with the SCR system persists.

The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition.

You should go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Otherwise you will not be able to restart the vehicle.

## Starting prevented



Each time the ignition is switched on, these warning lamps come on and the AdBlue warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault: Starting prevented".

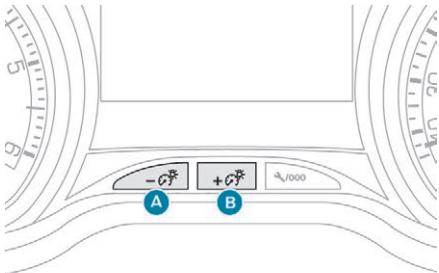
- !** You have exceeded the authorised driving limit: the starting prevention system does not allow the engine to be started.

To be able to start the engine, you must call on a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Lighting dimmer

System for the manual adjustment of the brightness of the instrument panel and the touch screen to suit the exterior light level.

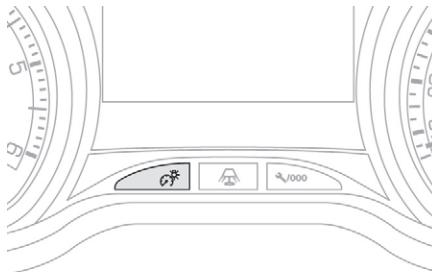
## LCD instrument panel



With the lighting on, press button **B** to increase the brightness of the instruments and controls and the interior ambient lighting or button **A** to reduce it.

As soon as the lighting reaches the required level of brightness, release the button.

## Matrix instrument panel



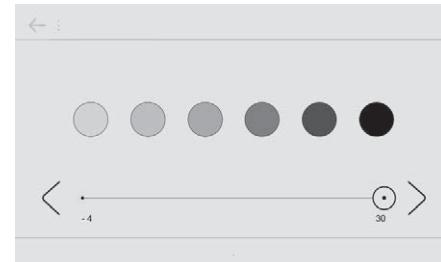
### Activation

- Press the button to change the brightness of the instruments and controls.
- Release the button when the desired level is reached.

### Deactivation

When the vehicle lighting is off, or in day mode (daytime running lamps on), pressing the button does not have any effect.

## Touch screen



- In the **Settings** menu, select "Brightness".
- Adjust the brightness by pressing the arrows or moving the slider.

**i** The brightness can be adjusted differently for day mode (lighting control stalk in position "0") and night mode (lighting control stalk in any other position).

## Distance recorders

### Total distance recorder



System which measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle during its life.

The total distance is displayed in zone **A** of the instrument panel screen.

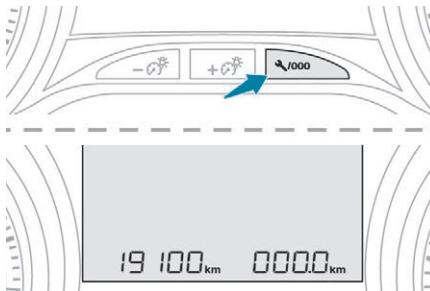
### Trip recorder



System that measures the distance travelled (daily, for example) since it was last reset by the driver.

The trip recorder is displayed in zone **B** of the instrument panel screen.

## Trip recorder reset

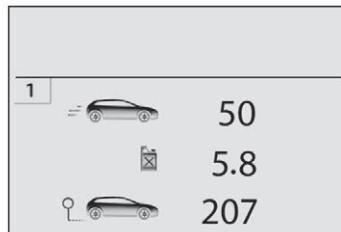


With the trip mileage displayed, press this button for a few seconds.

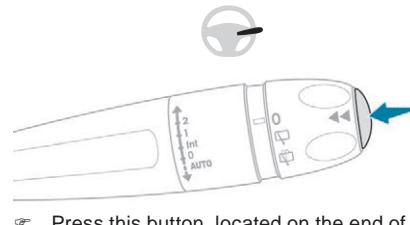
## Trip computer

Information displayed about the current journey (range, fuel consumption, average speed, etc.).

### With matrix instrument panel

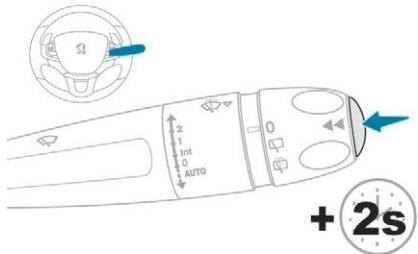


## Display of information in the instrument panel



- ☞ Press this button, located on the end of the **wiper control stalk**, to display the different tabs in turn.
  - The current information tab with:
    - the range,
    - the current fuel consumption,
    - the Stop & Start time counter.
  - The trip "1" tab with:
    - the average speed,
    - the average fuel consumption,
    - the distance travelled.
  - The trip "2" tab with:
    - the average speed,
    - the average fuel consumption,
    - the distance travelled.

## Resetting the trip recorder



- When the desired trip is displayed, press the end of the **wiper control stalk** for more than two seconds.

Trips **1** and **2** are independent but their use is identical.

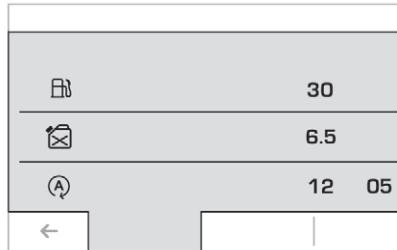
For example, trip **1** can be used for daily figures and trip **2** for monthly figures.

## With touch screen



The data is accessible in the **"Applications"** menu.

## Display of information in the touch screen



Permanent display:

- In the **"Applications"** menu, select **"Trip computer"**.
- Press one of the buttons to display the desired tab.

Temporary display in a specific window:

- Press the end of the wiper control stalk for access to the information and to display the different tabs.

The Current information tab with:

- the range,
- the current fuel consumption,
- the Stop & Start time counter.

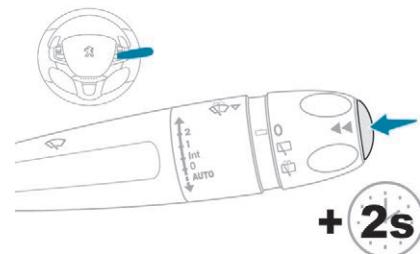
The trip **"1"** tab with:

- the distance travelled,
- the average fuel consumption,
- the average speed.

The trip **"2"** tab with:

- the distance travelled,
- the average fuel consumption,
- the average speed.

## Resetting the trip recorder



- When the desired trip is displayed, press the end of the **wiper control stalk** for more than two seconds.

Trips **1** and **2** are independent but their use is identical.

For example, trip **1** can be used for daily figures and trip **2** for monthly figures.

## A few definitions

### Range

(miles or km)



The distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank (at the average fuel consumption seen over the last few miles [kilometres] travelled).



**i** This value may fluctuate if a change of driving style or terrain results in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

Dashes are displayed when the range falls below 19 miles (30 km).

After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed if it exceeds 62 miles (100 km).

**!** If dashes are displayed continuously while driving in place of the digits, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

### Current fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

Calculated over the last few seconds.



**i** This function is only displayed from approximately 19 mph (30 km/h).

### Average fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)



Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

### Distance travelled

(miles or km)



Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

### Average speed

(mph or km/h)



Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

### Total time in stop mode

ECO (minutes/seconds or hours/minutes)



If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, a time counter adds up the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.

It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

### Touch screen

This system gives access to:

- the permanent display of the time and the exterior temperature (a blue symbol appears when there is a risk of ice),
- menus for adjusting settings for vehicle functions and systems,
- audio system and telephone controls and the display of associated information,
- the display of visual manoeuvring aids (visual parking sensor information, Park Assist, , etc.),
- Internet services and the display of associated information.

and, depending on equipment, it allows access:

- to the navigation system controls and the display of associated information.

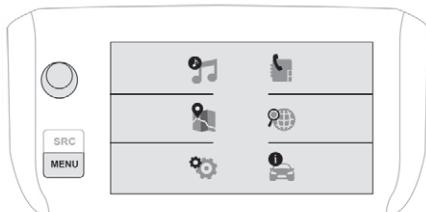
**!** For safety reasons, the vehicle must always be stationary for the driver to perform operations that require close attention.  
Some functions are not accessible when driving.

## General operation

### Recommendations

This screen is of the capacitive type.  
Use is possible in all temperatures.  
Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen.  
Do not touch the touch screen with wet hands.  
Use a soft clean cloth to clean the touch screen.

## Principles



Press the **MENU** button at the side of the touch screen to access the rolling menus display, then use the buttons that appear on the touch screen.  
Some menus may display across two pages: press the "OPTIONS" button to access the second page.

**i** After a few moments with no action on the second page, the first page is displayed automatically.

To deactivate or activate a function, select "OFF" or "ON".

Use this button to adjust the settings for a function.

Use this button for access to additional information on the function.

Use this button to confirm.

Use this button to return to the previous page.

## Menus

Press with three fingers on the touch screen to display the rolling menus display.



### Radio Media

See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.



### Connected navigation

See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.



### Telephone

See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.



### Settings

Allows configuration of the display and the system.



### Applications

Access direct access to the trip computer.



### Driving or Vehicle\*

Allows the activation, deactivation and adjustment of settings for certain functions.

The functions accessible from this menu are arranged under two tabs: "**Vehicle settings**" and "**Driving functions**".



Volume control/mute.

Audio system on/off.

See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

## Upper banner

Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper banner of the touch screen:

- Time and exterior temperature (a blue warning lamp appears when there is a risk of ice).
- Summary of information from the **Radio**, **Media** and **Telephone** menus and navigation instructions\*.
- Notifications.
- Access to **Settings** for the touch screen (date/time, languages, units, etc.).

## Driving/Vehicle menu

### "Driving functions" tab

Function	Comments
<b>"Adjusting Speeds"</b>	Memorisation of speed settings for the speed limiter or programmable cruise control.
<b>"Under-inflation initialisation"</b>	Reinitialisation of the under-inflation detection system.
<b>"Parking sensors"</b>	Activation/deactivation of the function.
<b>"Traction control"</b>	Activation/deactivation of the function.
<b>"Diagnostic"</b>	List of current alerts



For more information on one of these functions, refer to the corresponding section.

\* Depending on equipment.

## "Vehicle settings" tab

### PEUGEOT Connect Radio

Families	Functions
 "Parking"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>"Rear wiper in reverse": activation/deactivation of the rear wiper with reverse gear.</li> </ul>
 "Headlamps"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>"Directional headlamps": activation/deactivation of cornering lighting.</li> <li>"Guide-me-home lighting": activation/deactivation of automatic guide-me-home lighting.</li> <li>"Welcome lighting": activation/deactivation of exterior welcome lighting.</li> <li>"Daytime running lamps": activation/deactivation of daytime running lamps (depending on country of sale).</li> </ul>
 "Comfort"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>"Ambient lighting": activation/deactivation of ambient lighting and adjustment of brightness.</li> </ul>
 "Security"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>"Automatic emergency braking": activation/deactivation of automatic emergency braking.</li> </ul>

 For more information on one of these functions, refer to the corresponding section.

## PEUGEOT Connect Nav

Families	Functions
 "Driving lighting"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>"Directional headlamps": activation/deactivation of cornering lighting.</li> <li>"Daytime running lamps": activation/deactivation of daytime running lamps (depending on country of sale).</li> </ul>
 "Comfort lighting"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>"Guide-me-home lighting": activation/deactivation of automatic guide-me-home lighting.</li> <li>"Welcome lighting": activation/deactivation of exterior welcome lighting.</li> <li>"Ambient lighting": activation/deactivation of ambient lighting and adjustment of brightness.</li> </ul>
 "Security"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>"Rear wiper in reverse": activation/deactivation of the rear wiper with reverse gear.</li> <li>"Automatic emergency braking": activation/deactivation of automatic emergency braking.</li> </ul>

 For more information on one of these functions, refer to the corresponding section.

## "Settings" menu

## PEUGEOT Connect Radio

Button	Comments
	Turn off the screen (black screen). To return to the current screen, press the black screen or the <b>MENU</b> button.
	Adjustment of the brightness of the instrument panel ambient lighting.
	Choice and settings for three user profiles.
	Touch screen settings.
	Activation and configuration of the settings for the Wi-Fi (depending on availability).

## Touch screen settings



The functions available through the upper banner are detailed in the table below.

These settings are also accessible from the "**OPTIONS**" button in the "**Settings**" menu.

Button	Comments
	Adjustment of the display parameters (text scrolling, animations, etc.) and brightness.
	Choice of units: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- temperature (°Celsius or °Fahrenheit),</li><li>- distances and fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l).</li></ul>
	Choice of language for the touch screen display.
	Setting the date and time.

## PEUGEOT Connect Nav

Button	Comments
	Select colour scheme.
	Audio settings (sound ambience, sound distribution, sound level, voice volume, ringtone volume).
	Switch off the screen.
<b>OPTIONS</b>	Touch screen settings.

## Touch screen settings



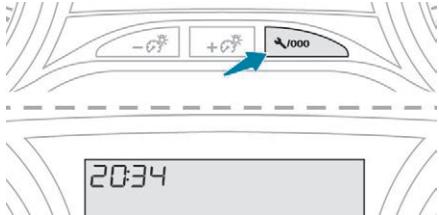
The functions available through the upper banner are detailed in the table below.

These settings are also accessible from the "**OPTIONS**" button in the "**Settings**" menu.

Button	Comments
	Choice of units: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- temperature (°Celsius or °Fahrenheit),</li><li>- distances and fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l).</li></ul>
	Choice of language for the touch screen display.
	Setting the date and time. Option of synchronisation with GPS.
	Adjustment of the display parameters (text scrolling, animations, etc.) and brightness.
	Choice and settings for three user profiles.

## Date and time adjustment

### Instrument panel



- ☞ Each press of this button toggles between the following settings:
  - hour,
  - minutes,
  - 12 or 24 hour format.

### With PEUGEOT Connect Radio



- ☞ Select the **Settings** menu in the upper bar of the touch screen.

- ☞ Select "**Configuration**".



- ☞ Select "**Date and time**".

- ☞ Select "**Date**" or "**Time**".
- ☞ Choose the display formats.
- ☞ Change the date and/or time using the numeric keypad.
- ☞ Confirm with "**OK**".

### With PEUGEOT Connect Nav

Adjustment of the time and date is only available if synchronisation with GPS is deactivated.

- ☞ Select the "**Settings**" menu.
- ☞ Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.
- ☞ Select "Setting the time-date".
- ☞ Select the "**Date**" or "**Time**" tab.
- ☞ Adjust the date and time using the numeric keypad and confirm.
- ☞ In the selected tab, press this key to confirm.

### Additional settings

You can choose:

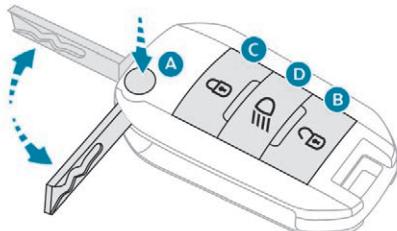
- To change the date format (DD/MM/YYYY, YYYY/MM/DD, etc.)
- To change the time format (12h/24h).
- To change the time zone.
- To activate or deactivate synchronisation with the GPS (UTC).

**i** The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on country). The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

## Remote control key

System which permits central unlocking or locking of the vehicle using the door lock or from a distance.

It also ensures the locating and starting of the vehicle, as well as theft protection.



- A. Unfolding/Folding.
- B. Unlocking.  
Disarming the alarm.
- C. Locking.  
Locating the vehicle.  
Arming the alarm.
- D. Guide-me-home lighting.

## Unfolding/Folding the key

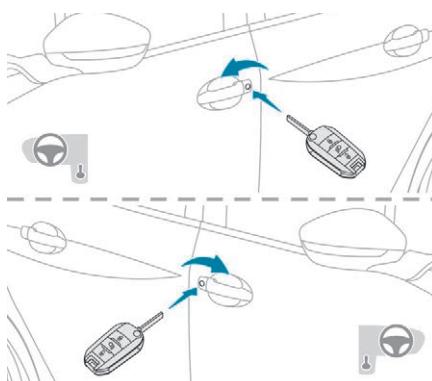
- ☞ Press button A to unfold/fold the key.



If you do not press the button, you risk damaging the remote control.

## Unlocking the vehicle

### With the key



- ☞ Turn the key in the driver's door lock towards the front of the vehicle to unlock it.

### With the remote control



- ☞ Press the open padlock to unlock the vehicle.

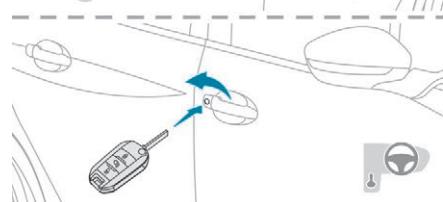
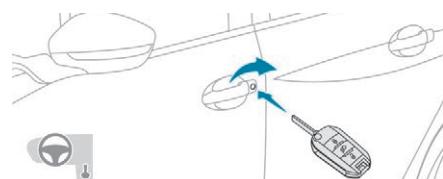
**i** Unlocking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for around 2 seconds.

At the same time, depending on your version, the door mirrors unfold.

Unlocking with the key does not deactivate the alarm.

## Locking the vehicle

### With the key



- ☞ Turn the key in the driver's door lock towards the rear of the vehicle to lock it.

## With the remote control



- ☞ Press the closed padlock button to lock the vehicle.

Maintaining the locking action (with the key or remote control) automatically closes the windows.

- ☞ Locking is confirmed by fixed lighting of the direction indicators for approximately 2 seconds.

Depending on your version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.

- ❗ As a safety measure (with children on board), never leave the vehicle without taking your key, even for a short period.

- ❗ If one of the doors or the boot is still open, the central locking does not take place. When the vehicle is locked, if it is unlocked inadvertently, it will lock itself again automatically after about 30 seconds unless a door is opened. When the key is in the ignition switch, its locking/unlocking functions are deactivated. The automatic folding and unfolding of the electric door mirrors can be deactivated by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Locating your vehicle



- ☞ A press switches on the vehicle's lighting and flashes the direction indicators for a few seconds to help you locate your vehicle.

## Guide-me-home lighting



- Make a long press on this button to operate the guide-me-home lighting (switching on the sidelamps, dipped beams and number plate lamps).

A second press before the end of the timed period cancels the guide-me-home lighting.

## Advice

### Remote control

The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.

Do not press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. It might stop working. It will then be necessary to reinitialise it again. The remote control does not operate when the key is in the ignition, even when the ignition is switched off.

### Anti-theft protection

Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.

For vehicles with an ignition switch, do not forget to remove the key and turn the steering wheel to engage the steering lock.

### ! Locking the vehicle

Driving with the doors locked could make it difficult for the emergency services to enter the vehicle in an emergency. As a safety precaution (with children on board), remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

### ! Lost keys, remote control

Go to a PEUGEOT dealer with the vehicle's registration document, your personal identification documents and if possible the key code label. The PEUGEOT dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key.

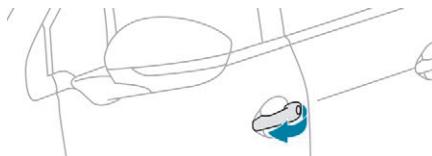
### ! Purchasing a second-hand vehicle

Have the key codes memorised by a PEUGEOT dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones which can start the vehicle.

## Doors

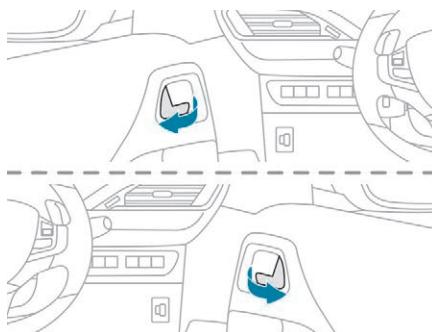
### Opening

#### From outside



- After unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the key, pull the door handle.

#### From inside



- Pull the interior door opening control; this unlocks the whole vehicle.

**i** The interior opening control on a rear door does not work if the child lock is on.

For more information on the **Child Lock**, refer to the corresponding section.

### Closing

- Push or pull the door to close it.

When one of the doors is not properly closed:



- with the engine running**, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by the display of an alert message for a few seconds,
- when driving** (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of an alert message for a few seconds.

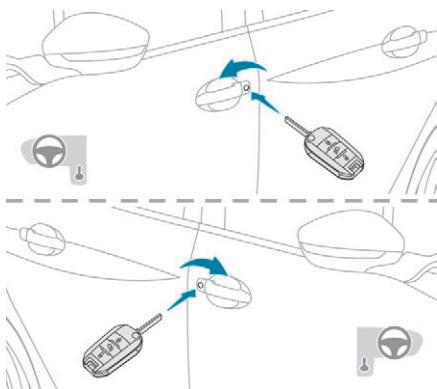
**i** The interior door controls do not operate when the vehicle is deadlocked.

## Back-up procedures

For mechanically locking and unlocking the doors in the event of a fault with the central locking system or a battery failure.

**i** In the event of a fault with the central locking system, it is essential to disconnect the battery to lock the boot and so ensure complete locking of the vehicle.

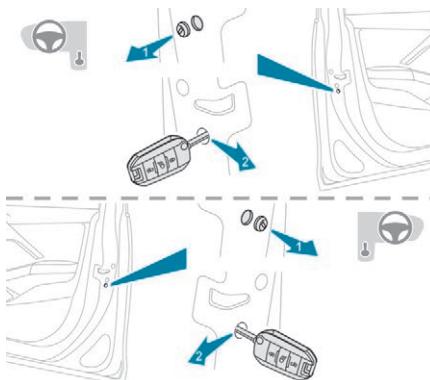
## Driver's door



Insert the key in the door lock to lock or unlock the door.

## Passenger doors

### Locking



- ☞ On the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on.
- ☞ Remove the black cap located on the edge of the door, using the key.
- ☞ Insert the key in the socket without forcing it, then without turning it, move the latch sideways towards the inside of the door.
- ☞ Remove the key and refit the cap.

### Unlocking

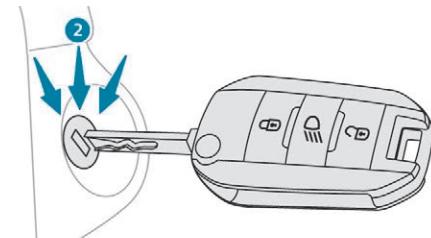
- ☞ Pull the interior door opening control.

## Remote control problem

Following disconnection of the vehicle battery, replacement of the remote control battery or in the event of a remote control malfunction, you can no longer unlock, lock or locate your vehicle.

- ☞ First of all, use the key in the door lock to unlock or lock your vehicle.
- ☞ Then reinitialise the remote control. If the problem persists, contact a PEUGEOT dealer as soon as possible.

## Reinitialisation



- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Turn the key to position **2 (ignition on)**.
- ☞ Immediately press the closed padlock button for a few seconds.
- ☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the switch.

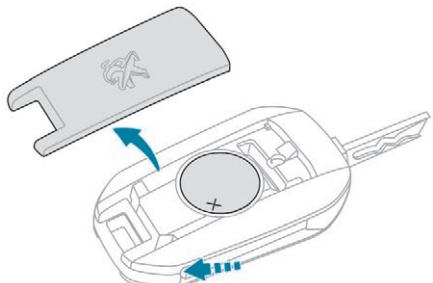
The remote control is now fully operational again.

## Changing the battery

Battery type: CR1620/3 volts.



If the battery is flat, you are informed by lighting of this warning lamp in the instrument panel, an audible signal and a message in the screen.



- ☞ Unclip the cover by inserting a small screwdriver in the slot.
- ☞ Remove the cover.
- ☞ Remove the discharged battery from its housing.
- ☞ Fit the new battery into its housing observing the polarity.
- ☞ Clip the cover onto the casing.



Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved collection point.

## Locking/Unlocking from the inside



- ☞ Press this button to lock (the red indicator lamp in the button comes on) or unlock (the indicator lamp in the button goes off) the vehicle's doors and boot from the passenger compartment.

If one of the doors is not properly closed:



- **with the engine running**, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by the display of an alert message for a few seconds,
- **when driving** (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of an alert message for a few seconds.



If one of the doors is open, central locking does not take place.



### When locking/deadlocking from the outside

When the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the button does not operate.

- ☞ After normal locking, pull one of the interior door controls to unlock the vehicle.
- ☞ After deadlocking, it is necessary to use the remote control or the key to unlock the vehicle.

## Automatic central locking of the doors

The doors can lock automatically while driving (speed above 6 mph [10 km/h]).

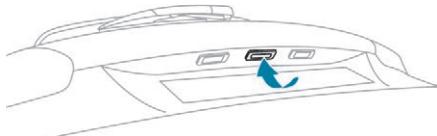
To turn this function on or off (on by default):

- ☞ press and hold the button until there is an audible signal and/or a message in the screen.



Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.

## Boot Opening



- After unlocking the boot or the vehicle using the remote control or the key, press the opening control, then raise the tailgate.

## Closing

- Lower the tailgate using the interior grab handle.
- If necessary, press down on the tailgate to fully close it.

If the tailgate is not fully closed:



- with the engine running**, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by the display of an alert message for a few seconds,
- when driving** (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of an alert message for a few seconds.

**!** In the event of a fault or difficulties felt in manoeuvring the tailgate when opening or closing it, have it quickly checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to stop this issue getting worse and so as not to cause the tailgate to drop, risking serious injuries.

**i** In the event of a fault with the central locking system, it is essential to disconnect the battery to lock the boot and so ensure complete locking of the vehicle.

2

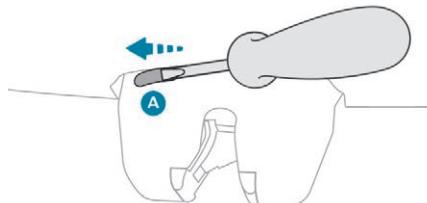
## Alarm



### Back-up control

System for mechanical unlocking of the boot in the event of a central locking malfunction.

### Unlocking



- Fold the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.
- Insert a small screwdriver into hole A of the lock to unlock the boot.

System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins. It provides the following types of monitoring:

#### - Exterior perimeter monitoring

The system checks the opening of the vehicle. The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot, the bonnet, etc.

#### - Interior volumetric monitoring

The system checks for any variation in the volume of the passenger compartment. The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

## - Self-protection function

The system checks the deactivation status of its components.

The alarm is triggered if the siren's battery, central control unit or wiring is put out of service or damaged.

For all work on the alarm system, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Locking the vehicle with full alarm system

### Activation

☞ Turn the ignition off and exit the vehicle.



☞ Press the locking button on the remote control.



The alarm monitoring system is activated (armed): the red indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second.

After the locking button on the remote control is pressed, the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after a delay of 5 seconds and the interior volumetric monitoring after a delay of 45 seconds.

If an opening (door, boot, etc.) is incorrectly closed, the vehicle is not locked but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after 45 seconds at the same time as the interior volumetric monitoring.

## Deactivation



☞ Press the unlocking button on the remote control.



The alarm system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

## Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric monitoring to avoid unwanted triggering of the alarm in certain cases such as:

- leaving a pet in the vehicle,
- leaving a window partially open,
- washing your vehicle.

## Deactivating the interior volumetric monitoring

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Within 10 seconds, press the button until the red indicator lamp is on continuously.
- ☞ Get out of the vehicle.
- ☞ Immediately press the locking button on the remote control.

Only exterior perimeter monitoring is activated: the red indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second.

**i** To take effect, this deactivation must be carried out each time the ignition is switched off.

## Reactivating the interior volumetric monitoring

- ☞ Press the unlocking button on the remote control to deactivate the exterior perimeter monitoring.
- ☞ Press the locking button on the remote control to activate all the monitoring functions.

The red indicator lamp in the button once again flashes every second.

## Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for 30 seconds.

The monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times in succession.

When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control, rapid flashing of the indicator lamp in the button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.

## Remote control fault

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

- ☛ Unlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock.
- ☛ Open the door; the alarm is triggered.
- ☛ Switch on the ignition; this stops the alarm. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

## Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

- ☛ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock.

## Malfunction

When the ignition is switched on, fixed illumination of the red indicator lamp in the button indicates a malfunction of the system. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

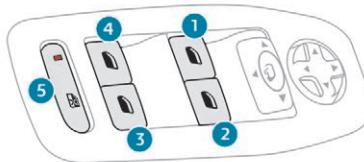
## Automatic activation

(Depending on the country where the product is sold.)

The system is activated automatically 2 minutes after the last door or the boot is closed.

- ☛ To avoid triggering the alarm on entering the vehicle, first press the unlocking button on the remote control.

## Electric windows



1. Front left electric window switch.
2. Front right electric window switch.
3. Rear right electric window switch.
4. Rear left electric window switch.
5. Deactivating the rear electric window control switches.

## Manual operation

To open or close the window, press or pull the switch, without going past the point of resistance. The window stops as soon as the switch is released.

## Automatic operation (depending on version)

To open or close the window, press or pull the switch, beyond the point of resistance: the window opens or closes completely when the switch is released. Pressing the switch again stops the movement of the window.

**i** The electric window switches remain operational for approximately one minute after the key has been removed. Once this time has elapsed, the electric windows will not operate. To reactivate them, switch the ignition on again.

## Safety anti-pinch (depending on version)

When the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and immediately partially lowers again. In the event of unwanted opening of the window when closing automatically, press the switch until the window opens completely, then pull the switch immediately until the window closes. Continue to hold the switch for approximately one second after the window has closed. The safety anti-pinch function is not active during this operation.

## Deactivating the rear electric window controls



For the safety of your children, press switch 5 to deactivate the rear electric window control switches, irrespective of their position.

When the indicator lamp is on, the rear controls are deactivated. When the indicator lamp is off, the rear controls are active.

## Reinitialising the electric windows

Following reconnection of the battery, the anti-pinch safety function must be reinitialised.

The anti-pinch safety function is not active during these operations:

- bring the window down completely, then bring it back up. It will go up by a few centimetres with each press. Repeat the operation until the window is fully closed,
- continue to pull the switch upwards for at least one second after reaching the window closed position.



Always remove the key when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

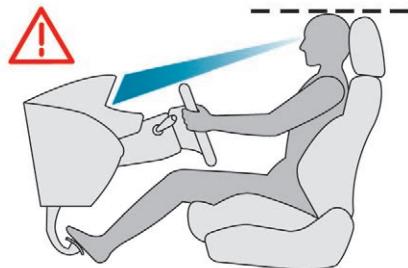
If an electric window meets an obstacle during operation, you must reverse the movement of the window. To do this, press the corresponding switch.

When operating the passenger electric window switches, the driver must ensure that no-one is preventing the windows from closing correctly.

The driver must ensure that the passengers use the electric windows correctly.

Be aware of children when operating the windows.

## PEUGEOT i-Cockpit

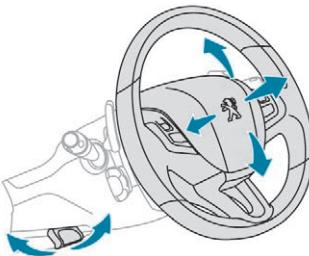


Before taking to the road and in order to take advantage of the specific ergonomics of the PEUGEOT i-Cockpit, adjust in the following order:

- the height of the head restraint,
- the seat backrest angle,
- the seat cushion height,
- the longitudinal position of the seat,
- the depth and then the height of the steering wheel,
- the rear view mirror and door mirrors.

Once these adjustments have been made, make sure that the "head-up" instrument panel can be viewed correctly over the smaller diameter steering wheel.

## Steering wheel adjustment



- ☞ When stationary, pull the control lever to release the steering wheel adjustment mechanism.
- ☞ Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.
- ☞ Push the control lever to lock the steering wheel adjustment mechanism.

! For safety reasons, these adjustments must only be made with the vehicle stationary.

## Mirrors

### Door mirrors

Each fitted with an adjustable mirror allowing for the lateral rear vision necessary for overtaking or parking. They can also be folded for parking in confined spaces.

! As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the blind spots.

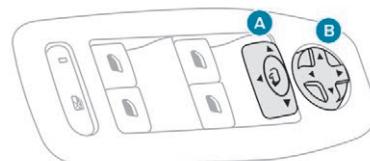
## Demisting – Defrosting



Demisting – defrosting of the door mirrors operates with the engine running, by switching on the heated rear screen.

For more information on **Rear screen demist – defrost**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Adjustment



- ☞ Move control A to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- ☞ Move control B in any of the four directions to adjust.
- ☞ Return control A to its centre position.

! Objects seen in the mirror are in reality closer than they appear.

Take this into account when assessing the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

## Folding

- Automatic: lock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- Manual: with the ignition on, pull control A rearwards.

! If the mirrors are folded using control A, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. Pull again on control A.

## Unfolding

- Automatic: unlock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- Manual: with the ignition on, pull control A rearwards.

! The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

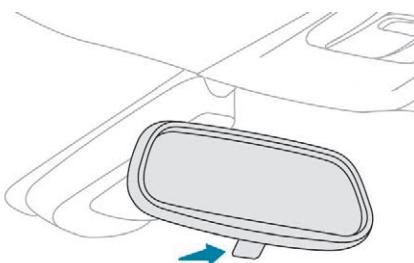
Fold the mirrors when putting your vehicle through an automatic car wash.

! If necessary, the mirrors can be folded manually.

## Rear view mirror

Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlamps from other vehicles, etc.

## Manual model



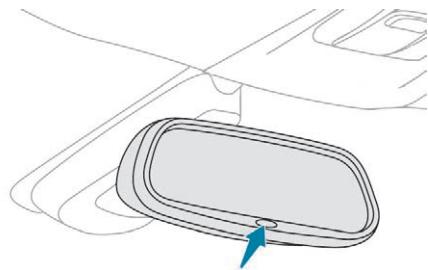
## Adjustment

- Adjust the mirror so that the glass is directed correctly in the "day" position.

## Day/night position

- Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.
- Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

## Automatic "electrochrome" model



This system automatically and progressively changes between day and night use by means of a sensor measuring the light coming from the rear of the vehicle.

! In order to ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

## Front seats

! For safety reasons, only adjust seats with the vehicle stationary.

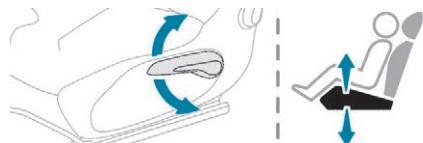
! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing or no-one that might prevent the full travel of the seat. There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

## Longitudinal adjustment



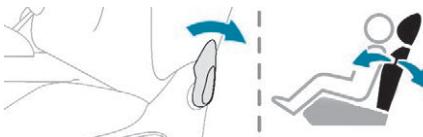
- ☞ Raise the control and slide the seat forwards or backwards.

## Height adjustment



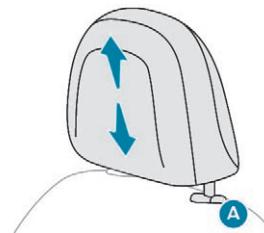
- ☞ Pull the control upwards to raise or push it downwards to lower, as many times as necessary to obtain the position required.

## Seat backrest angle

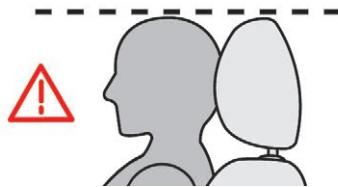


- ☞ Push the control backwards.

## Head restraint



- ☞ To raise a head restraint, pull it upwards.
- ☞ To remove it, press the lug A and pull it upwards.
- ☞ To refit the head restraint back in place, engage the head restraint rods in the openings keeping them in line with the seat backrest.
- ☞ To lower a head restraint, press the lug A and push down on the head restraint at the same time.



! The head restraint has a frame with notches which prevents it from lowering; this is a safety device in case of impact.

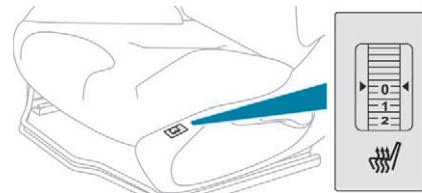
**The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the head restraint is level with the top of the head.**

Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be fitted and correctly adjusted.

3

## Heated seats

With the engine running, the front seats can be heated separately.



## Ease of use and comfort

☞ Use the adjustment dial, on the side of each front seat, to switch on and select the level of heating required:

- 0:** Off.
- 1:** Low.
- 2:** Medium.
- 3:** High.



Do not use the function when the seat is not occupied.

Reduce the intensity of the heating as soon as possible.

When the seat and passenger compartment have reached an adequate temperature, you can stop the function; reducing the consumption of electrical current reduces fuel consumption.

! Prolonged use at the highest setting is not recommended for those with sensitive skin.

There is a risk of burns for people whose perception of heat is impaired (illness, taking medication, etc.).

There is a risk of overheating if the system material with insulating properties is used, such as cushions or seat covers.

Do not use the system:

- if wearing damp clothing,
- if child seats are fitted.

To avoid breaking the heating element in the seat:

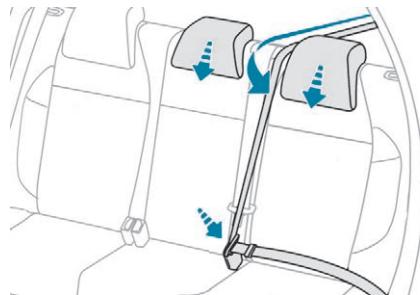
- do not place heavy objects on the seat,
- do not kneel or stand on the seat,
- do not place sharp objects on the seat,
- do not spill liquids onto the seat.

To avoid the risk of short-circuit:

- do not use liquid products for cleaning the seat,
- never use the heating function when the seat is damp.

## Folding the backrest

☞ Move the corresponding front seat forwards, if necessary.



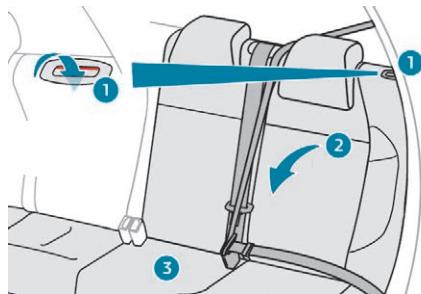
☞ Position the corresponding outer seat belt against the backrest and fasten it.

☞ Place the head restraints in the low position.

! When folding the seat, the centre seat belt should not be fastened but laid out flat along the backrest.

## Rear seats

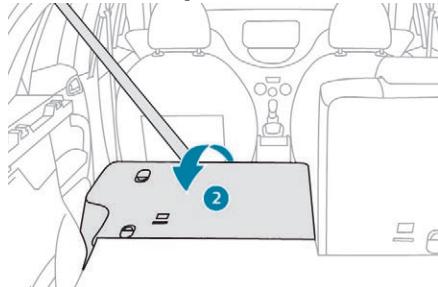
Bench seat with fixed one-piece cushion and split backrest (left-hand 2/3, right-hand 1/3) which can be folded individually to adapt the load space in the boot.



- Press control 1 to release seat backrest 2.
- Fold seat backrest 2 onto cushion 3.

**i** The seat backrest alone can be folded to increase the boot loading space. The rear seat cushion does not fold.

## Returning the backrest to the normal position



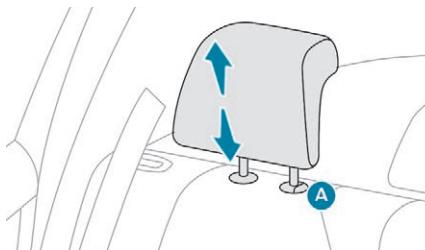
- Straighten backrest 2 and secure it.

- Check that the red indicator, located next to control 1, is no longer visible.
- Unfasten and reposition the outer seat belt on the side of the backrest.

**!** When repositioning the seat backrest, take care not to trap the seat belts.

## Head restraints

These have a position for use (up) and a stowed position (down). They can be removed and are interchangeable side to side.



To remove a head restraint:

- pull the head restraint upwards as far as possible,
- then, press the lug A.

**!** Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be fitted and correctly adjusted.

## Ventilation

### Air intake

The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the outside via the grille located at the base of the windscreen, or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

3

### Air treatment

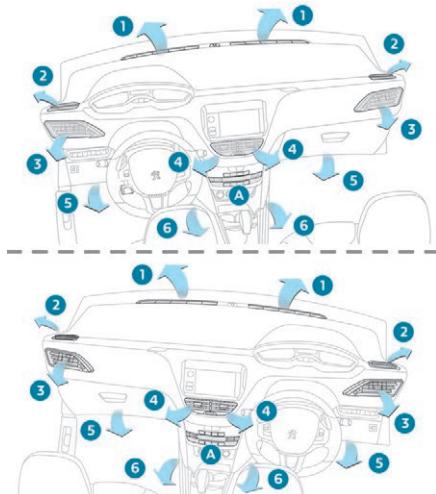
The incoming air follows various routes depending on the controls selected by the driver:

- direct arrival in the passenger compartment (air intake),
- passage through a heating circuit (heating),
- passage through a cooling circuit (air conditioning).

## Control panel

The controls of this system are grouped together on the control panel A on the centre console.

## Air distribution



1. Windscreen demisting/defrosting vents.
2. Front side window demisting/defrosting vents.
3. Adjustable and closable side air vents.
4. Adjustable and closable central air vents.
5. Air outlets to the front footwells.
6. Air outlets to the rear footwells.

## Advice

### **i** Using the ventilation and air conditioning system

- >To ensure that the air is distributed evenly, keep the external air intake grilles at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents, the air outlets and the air extractor in the boot free from obstructions.
- Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard; this is used for regulation of the automatic air conditioning system.
- Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes, once or twice a month to keep it in perfect working order.
- If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop. When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power and so improves the towing ability.



If after an extended stop in sunshine, the interior temperature is very high, first air the passenger compartment for a few moments.

Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.

**i** The condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle which is perfectly normal.

### **i** Servicing the ventilation and air conditioning system

- Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly. We recommend the use of a combined passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its special active additive, it contributes to the purification of the air breathed by the occupants and the cleanliness of the passenger compartment (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).

- To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, you are also advised to have it checked regularly as recommended in the Warranty and Maintenance Record.

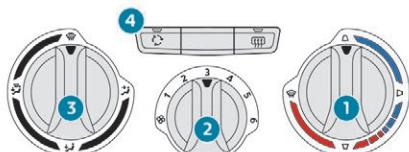
 Depending on version and country of sale, the air conditioning system contains fluorinated greenhouse gas **R134A**.  
Gas load: 0.525 kg (+/- 0.025 kg), GWP index 1,430 t (equivalent CO<sub>2</sub>: 0.751 t).

### Stop & Start

The heating and air conditioning systems only work when the engine is running. To maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment, you may temporarily deactivate the Stop & Start system.

For more information on **Stop & Start**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Heating



1. Temperature adjustment.
2. Air flow adjustment.
3. Air distribution adjustment.
4. Recirculation of interior air.

## Temperature

☞ Turn the knob **1** from blue (cold) to red (hot) to adjust the temperature.

## Air flow

☞ Turn the knob **2** from position "1" to position "6" to obtain the desired air flow for your comfort.

 If you place the air flow control at position "0"(off), the temperature in the vehicle will no longer be maintained. A slight flow of air can still be felt, resulting from the forward movement of the vehicle.

## Air distribution

You can vary the air distribution in the passenger compartment using the knob **3**.



Windscreen and side windows.



Windscreen, side windows and footwells.



Footwells.

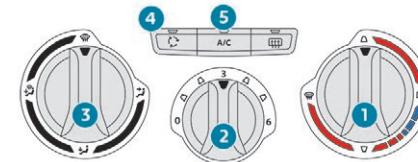


Central and side vents.



The air distribution can be modulated by placing the knob at an intermediate position.

## Manual air conditioning



1. Temperature adjustment.
2. Air flow adjustment.
3. Air distribution adjustment.
4. Recirculation of interior air.
5. Air conditioning on/off.

## Temperature

☞ Turn the knob **1** from blue (cold) to red (hot) to adjust the temperature.

## Air flow

☞ Turn the knob **2** from position "1" to position "6" to obtain the desired air flow for your comfort.

**i** If you place the air flow control at position "0" (off), the temperature in the vehicle will no longer be maintained. A slight flow of air can still be felt, resulting from the forward movement of the vehicle.

## Air distribution



Windscreen and side windows.



Windscreen, side windows and footwells.



Footwells.



Central and side vents.



The air distribution can be modulated by placing the knob at an intermediate position.

## Air conditioning

The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It enables you to:

- lower the temperature, in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

### On/Off

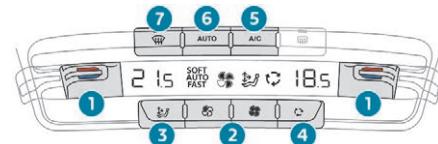
☞ Press button **5** to activate/deactivate the air conditioning system.

To cool the air more quickly, you can use interior air recirculation for a few moments by pressing button **4**. Then return to the intake of exterior air.

**i** The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment control **2** is in position "0".

**!** Switching the system off may result in some discomfort (humidity, misting).

## Dual-zone automatic air conditioning



1. Temperature adjustment for left/right side.
2. Air flow adjustment.
3. Air distribution adjustment.
4. Recirculation of interior air.
5. Air conditioning on/off.
6. Automatic comfort programme.
7. Automatic visibility programme.

## AUTO mode

### Comfort programme

Three modes allow the driver and front passenger to select their desired comfort settings for the passenger compartment.

### Switching on

☞ Press the button **6** successively. The indicator lamp comes on at the first press; the activated mode appears in the automatic air conditioning screen:

<b>SOFT AUTO</b>	Provides soft and quiet operation by limiting air flow.
<b>AUTO</b>	Offers the best compromise between a comfortable temperature and quiet operation.
<b>AUTO FAST</b>	Provides dynamic and effective air flow.

**i** When the engine is cold, the air flow will only reach its optimum level gradually to prevent too much cold air being distributed.  
In cold weather, it favours the distribution of warm air to the windscreen, the side windows and the footwells only.

## Switching off

☞ Press the "Empty fan" air flow button **2** until the fan symbol disappears.

## Temperature

The driver and front passenger can each set the temperature individually.

The value shown on the display is a level of comfort, not a temperature in Celsius or Fahrenheit.

☞ Push the button **1** down (blue) to reduce the value or up (red) to increase it.

A setting of around 21 provides optimum comfort. Depending on your requirements, a setting between 18 and 24 is normal. It is also recommended to avoid a left/right setting difference of more than 3.

**i** For maximum cooling or heating of the passenger compartment, it is possible to exceed the minimum value 14 or the maximum value 28.

☞ Push the button **1** down until "LO" is displayed or up until "HI" is displayed.

**i** On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort value setting, there is no need to alter the value displayed in order to reach the required level of comfort. The system compensates automatically and corrects the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

## Visibility programme

For information on how to use the visibility programme **7**, refer to the corresponding section in "**Front demist – defrost**".

## Air conditioning

The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It enables you to:

- lower the temperature, in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

## On/Off

☞ Press button **5** to activate/deactivate the air conditioning system.

To cool the air more quickly, you can use interior air recirculation for a few moments by pressing button **4**. Then return to the intake of exterior air.

**i** The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment control **2** is in position "**0**".

**!** Switching the system off may result in some discomfort (humidity, misting).

## Air distribution

☞ Press button **3** successively to direct the air flow towards:

- the windscreen, the side windows and the footwells,

## Ease of use and comfort

- the windscreen and the side windows (demisting or defrosting),
- the central and side vents,
- the central vents, the side vents and the footwells,
- the footwells.

### Air flow

☞ Press the "**Full fan**" button **2** to increase the air flow.

The air flow symbol (a fan) appears in the screen. It is filled in progressively in relation to the value required.

☞ Press the "**Empty fan**" button **2** to reduce the air flow.

### Manual mode

If you wish, you can make a different choice from that offered by the system by changing a setting. The other functions will still be automatically managed.

When you modify a setting, the indicator lamp in the button **6** goes off.

☞ Press the button **6** again to return to the automatic comfort programme.

### Deactivating the system

☞ Press the "**Empty fan**" air flow button **2** until the fan symbol disappears and " - - - " appears.

This action deactivates all functions of the air conditioning system.

Temperature is no longer regulated. A slight air flow can still be felt however, resulting from the forward movement of the vehicle.

**!** Avoid driving for too long with the system switched off – risk of misting and of deterioration of the air quality.

Pressing the "**Full fan**" button **2** reactivates the system with the values in use at the time it was switched off.

### Recirculation of the interior air

The intake of exterior air prevents the formation of mist on the windscreens and the side windows.

Recirculation of the interior air isolates the passenger compartment from exterior odours and fumes.

**i** This allows hot or cold air to be delivered more quickly when required.

☞ Press button **4** to recirculate the interior air/ to permit the intake of exterior air.  
When the interior air recirculation is active, the symbol appears or the indicator lamp comes on (depending on version).

**!** Avoid prolonged use of the recirculation of interior air – Risk of formation of mist and deterioration of the air quality!

### Front demist – defrost

#### With heating



Put the air flow, temperature and distribution controls to the appropriately marked position.

#### With manual air conditioning



☞ Put the controls for air flow **2**, temperature **1**, and air distribution **3** in the appropriately marked position.

☞ For air conditioning, press button **5**; its indicator lamp comes on.

## With dual-zone automatic air conditioning

### Auto – Visibility programme Switching on

- Press button **7** to demist or defrost the windscreen and side windows as quickly as possible.

The system automatically manages the air conditioning, air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.

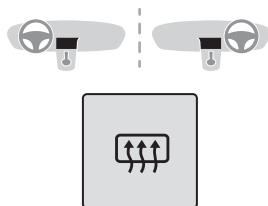
### Switching off

- Press button **7** again or button **6**; the indicator lamp in button **7** goes off, and the indicator lamp in button **6** comes on.

The system starts again with the values in use at the time it was switched off.

**i** With Stop & Start, when demisting – defrosting has been activated, STOP mode is not available.

## Rear screen demist – defrost



### On/Off

- Press this button to switch on/switch off the demisting/defrosting of the rear screen and door mirrors (depending on equipment).

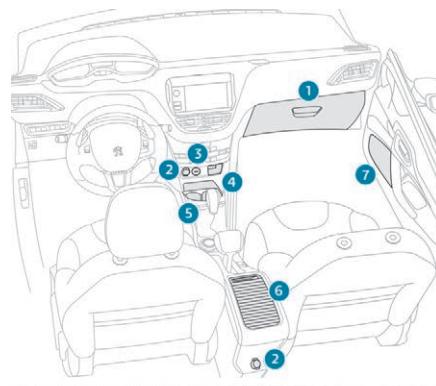


Switch off the demisting/defrosting of the rear screen and door mirrors as soon as appropriate, as lower current consumption results in reduced fuel consumption.

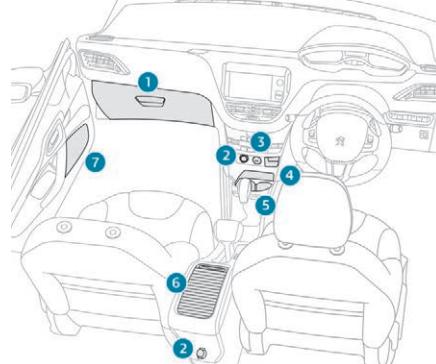


The rear screen demisting/defrosting can only operate when the engine is running.

## Interior fittings



3



1. Glove box

## 2. 12 V accessory socket (120 W)

Observe the maximum power rating to avoid damaging your accessory.

## 3. USB port/Jack socket\*

## 4. Open storage

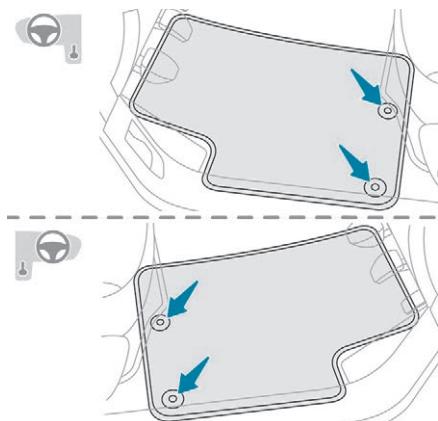
## 5. Cup holder

## 6. Closed storage or armrest\*

## 7. Door pockets

# Mats

## Removal



To remove the mat on the driver's side:

- move the seat as far back as possible,
- unclip the fixings,
- remove the mat.

\* Depending on version.

## Refitting

To refit the mat on the driver's side:

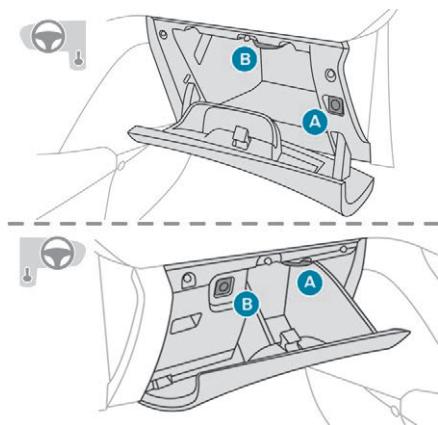
- position the mat correctly,
- put on the fixings again by pressing,
- check that the mat is secured correctly.



To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used,
- never place one mat on top of another. The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control/speed limiter.

# Glove box



It has dedicated locations for storing a water bottle, the vehicle handbook pack, etc.

Its lid has dedicated locations for storing a pair of glasses, etc.

- To open the glove box, raise the handle.

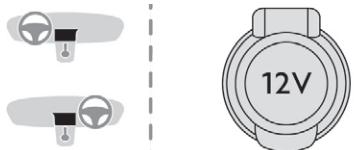


It houses the front passenger airbag deactivation switch **A**.

**i** If the vehicle is fitted with air conditioning, it provides access to the ventilation nozzle **B**, distributing the same conditioned air as the vents in the passenger compartment.

**!** Never drive with the glove box open when a passenger is at the front – it may cause injury during sharp deceleration!

## 12 V socket



**☞** To connect a 12 V accessory (max. power: 120 Watts), lift the cover and connect a suitable adaptor.

**!** Do not exceed the maximum power rating of the socket (otherwise this could cause damage to your portable device).

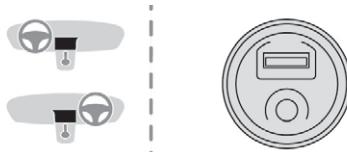
**!** The connection of an electrical device not approved by PEUGEOT, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor radio reception or interference with displays in the screens.

When the USB port is used, the portable device charges automatically. While charging, a message is displayed if the power consumption of the portable device exceeds the amperage supplied by the vehicle.

The USB port also allows a smartphone to be connected by MirrorLink™, Android Auto® or CarPlay®, so that certain applications on the smartphone can be used on the touch screen.

3

## USB port/Jack socket\*



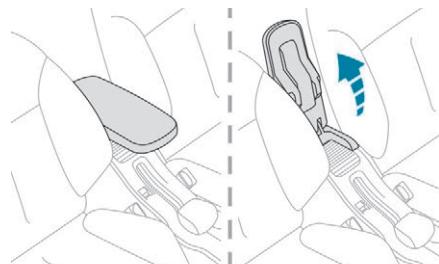
This connection box, consisting of a USB port and a JACK socket\*, is located on the centre console.

It allows the connection of portable devices such as iPod® type digital audio players or USB memory sticks.

It reads the audio files and sends them to your audio system to be played through the vehicle's speakers.

You can manage these files using the steering mounted controls or the audio system control panel and display them on the screen.

## Front armrest

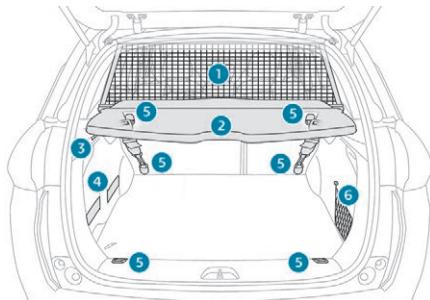


(Depending on version)

The armrest can be inclined forwards to benefit from its comfort or folded up completely backwards.

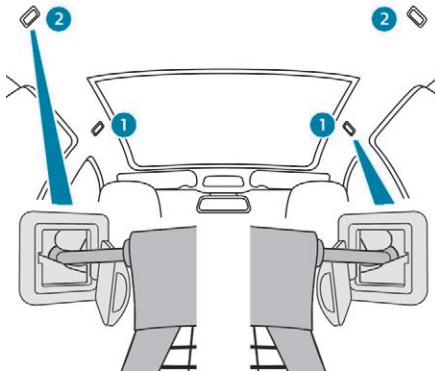
\* Depending on version.

## Boot fittings



1. **High load retaining net** (depending on version)
2. **Load space cover**
3. **Boot lamp**
4. **Luggage retaining strap**
5. **Stowing rings** (depending on version)
6. **Storage net**

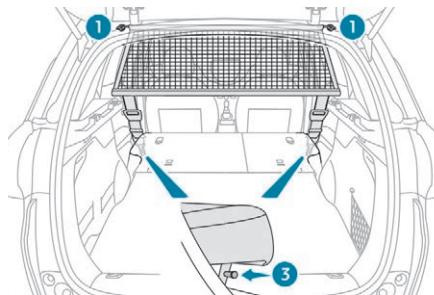
## High load retaining net



Hooked onto the upper fixings and lower rings or lugs, this allows the use of the entire loading volume up to the roof:

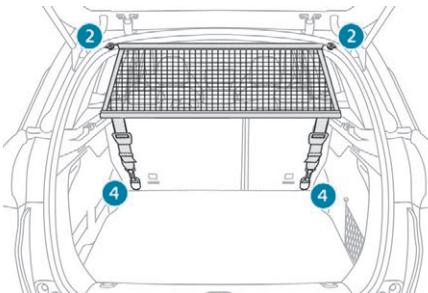
- behind the rear seats (row 2),
- behind the front seats (row 1) when the rear seats are folded.

**i** When positioning the net, check that the strap loops are visible from the boot; this will make slackening or tightening easier.



To use it in row 1:

- ☞ open the covers of the upper fixings 1,
- ☞ unroll the high load retaining net,
- ☞ position one of the ends of the net's metal bar in the corresponding upper fixing 1, then do the same with the other end,
- ☞ slacken the straps fully,
- ☞ fix the snap hook of each of the straps on the corresponding lug 3, located under the bench seat cushion,
- ☞ fold the rear seats,
- ☞ tighten the straps without raising the bench seat,
- ☞ check that the net is hooked and tensioned correctly.



To use it in row 2:

- ☛ fold or remove the load space cover,
- ☛ open the covers of the upper fixings 2,
- ☛ unroll the high load retaining net,
- ☛ position one of the ends of the net's metal bar in the corresponding upper fixing 2, then do the same with the other end,
- ☛ attach the hook of each of the net's straps in the corresponding lower ring 4,
- ☛ tighten the straps,
- ☛ check that the net is hooked and tensioned correctly.

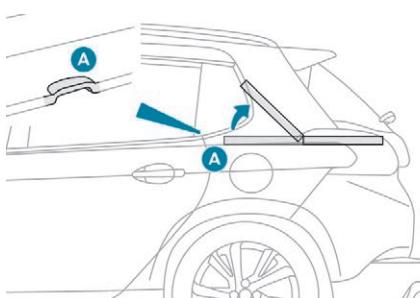
! Never use the ISOFIX ring corresponding to the fixing of the upper strap of a child seat with Top Tether.

## Load space cover



This consists of two sections which can be folded on each other.

To store it, fold it on itself and place it at the bottom of the boot.



To gain access to the boot from the rear seats:

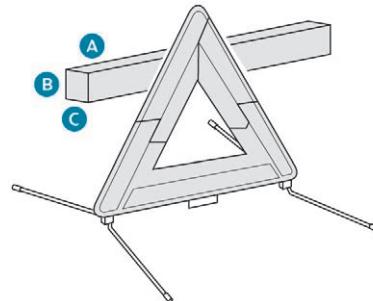
- ☛ raise the front section of the load space cover using the grip A.

! When sharp deceleration occurs, objects placed on the load space cover can turn into projectiles.

## Warning triangle (storage)

The location for stowing a folded triangle or its storage box is under the front seat or under the boot carpet (depending on version).

! Before leaving your vehicle to set up and install the triangle, switch on the hazard warning lamps and put on your high visibility vest.



The dimensions of the triangle (once folded) or its storage box must be:

- A: length = 438 mm,
- B: height = 56 mm,
- C: width = 38 mm.

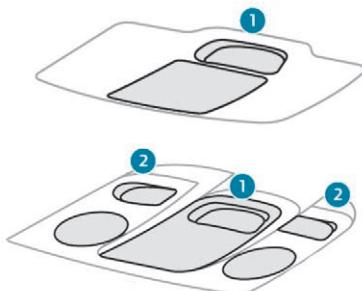
**i** Refer to the manufacturer's instructions on using the triangle.

## Placing the triangle in the road

☞ Place the triangle behind the vehicle, as required by the legislation in force in your country.

**i** The triangle is available as an accessory; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Courtesy lamps



### 1. Front/rear courtesy lamps

### 2. Map reading lamps

 In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked,
- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- when you open a door,
- when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate your vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.

 Permanently off.

 Permanent lighting.

**i** In permanent lighting mode, the lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

- when the ignition is off, approximately 10 minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately 30 seconds,
- with the engine running, unlimited.

## Map reading lamps

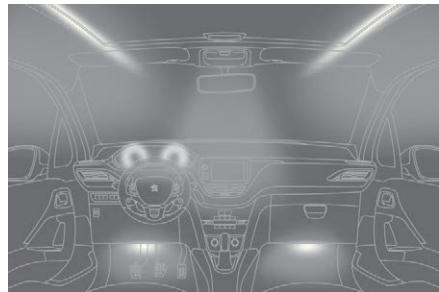
 ☞ With the ignition on, press the corresponding switch.

**!** Take care not to put anything in contact with the courtesy lamps.

## Interior ambient lighting

The dimmed passenger compartment lighting improves visibility in the vehicle when the light is poor.

## Switching on



At night, mood LEDs (courtesy lamp, instrument panel, footwells, back-lit headlining, panoramic glass sunroof\*, etc.) come on automatically when the sidelamps are switched on.

## Switching off

The ambient lighting switches off automatically when the sidelamps are switched off.

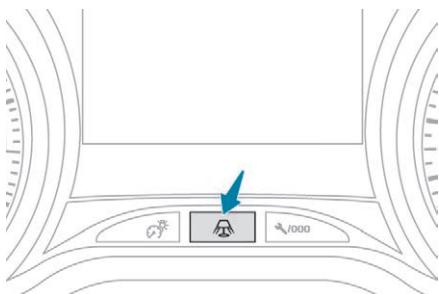
\* Depending on version.

**MENU** The interior ambient lighting can be configured in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu.



## Instrument panel ambient lighting

### Deactivation



With the exterior lighting on, press this button to turn the instrument panel ambient lighting off.

### Activation

With the exterior lighting on, press this button again to turn the instrument panel ambient lighting back on.

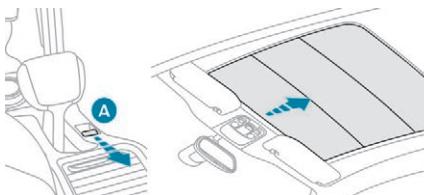
## Panoramic glass sunroof

System which comprises configurable light guides and a panoramic tinted glass area to increase the light and visibility in the passenger compartment.

It is fitted with an electric blind to improve temperature and acoustic comfort.

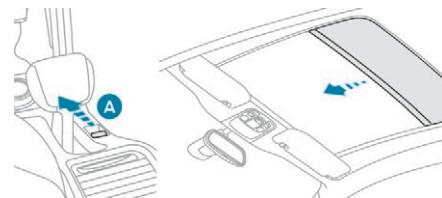
### Electric blind

#### Opening



☞ Lift control A towards the rear.  
The blind stops when you release the control.

### Closing



☞ Push control A forward.  
The blind stops when you release the control.

! If the blind meets an obstacle during operation, you must reverse the movement of the blind. To do this, press the switch concerned.

When the driver operates the blind control, they must ensure that no one is preventing correct closing of the blind.

The driver must ensure that passengers use the blind correctly.

Be particularly aware of children when operating the blind.

## Lighting control stalk

**i** In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

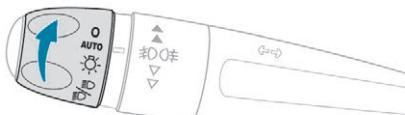
### Travelling abroad

If planning to use your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road, the headlamp dipped beams must be adjusted to avoid dazzling oncoming drivers. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Without AUTO lighting



## With AUTO lighting



## Selection of main lighting mode

Turn the ring to align the desired symbol with the marking.



Lighting off (ignition off)/Front daytime running lamps (engine running).



Sidelamps only.

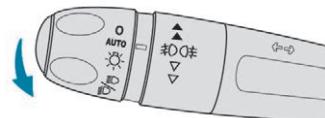


Dipped or main beam headlamps.



Automatic illumination of headlamps.

## Headlamp dipping stalk



Pull the stalk to switch the lighting between dipped and main beam headlamps.

In the lighting off and sidelamps modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps temporarily ("headlamp flash") by maintaining a pull on the stalk.

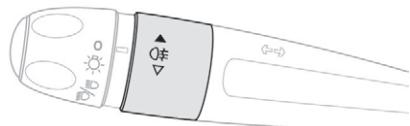
## Display

Illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp in the instrument panel confirms that the lighting selected is on.

## Foglamps

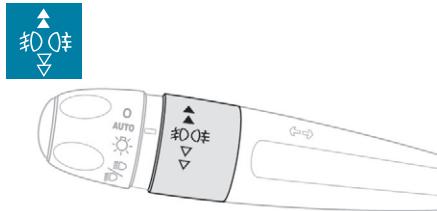
The foglamps operate with dipped or main beam headlamps on.

## Rear foglamp only



- To switch it on, turn the ring forwards. When the lighting is switched off automatically (version with AUTO lighting), the foglamp and the dipped beam headlamps will remain on.
- To switch it off, turn the ring rearwards.

## Front foglamps and rear foglamp



Rotate and release the ring:

- ☞ once forwards to switch on the front foglamps,
- ☞ forwards a second time to switch on the rear foglamp,
- ☞ once backwards to switch off the rear foglamp,
- ☞ backwards a second time to switch off the front foglamps.

If the lighting is switched off automatically (version with AUTO lighting) or the dipped beams are switched off manually, the foglamps and sidelamps remain on.

- ☞ Turn the ring rearwards to switch the foglamps off; the sidelamps will then switch off.

**!** In good or rainy weather, by day and night, using the front and rear foglamps is prohibited. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They should only be used in fog or falling snow.

In these weather conditions, it is your responsibility to switch on the foglamps and dipped beam headlamps manually as the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light.

Do not forget to turn off the front and rear foglamps as soon as they are no longer necessary.

### **i** Switching off of the lighting when the ignition is switched off

On switching off the ignition, all of the lighting turns off immediately, except for dipped beam if automatic guide-me-home lighting is activated.

### **i** Switching on the lighting after the ignition is switched off

To reactivate the lighting control, set the ring to **0 – lamps off**, then to the desired position.

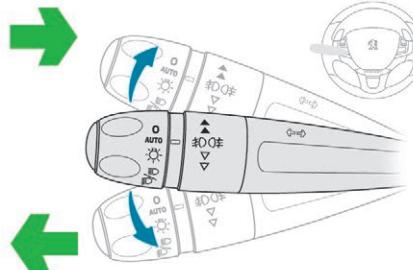
On opening the driver's door a temporary audible signal warns the driver that the lighting is on.

The lamps, with the exception of the sidelamps, switch off automatically after a maximum duration of 30 minutes to prevent discharging of the battery.

**!** Never look too closely at the luminous beam of "Full LED" headlamps: risk of serious eye injury.

4

## Direction indicators



- ☞ Lower the lighting control stalk fully when turning left.

☞ Raise the lighting control stalk fully when turning right.

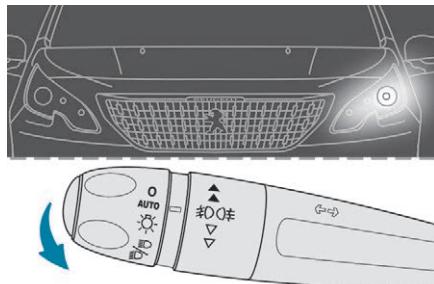
**i** If you forget to cancel the direction indicators for more than 20 seconds, the volume of the audible signal will increase if the speed is above 37 mph (60 km/h).

### Three flashes

Move the stalk briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the corresponding direction indicators will flash 3 times.

**i** This function can be used at any speed, but it is particularly useful for changing lane on fast roads.

### Parking lamps



Vehicle side marking by illumination of the sidelamps on the traffic side only.

☞ Within one minute after switching off the ignition, operate the lighting control stalk up or down, depending on the traffic side (for example, when parked on the left, move the lighting control stalk upwards; the right-hand sidelamps come on).

This is confirmed by an audible signal and illumination of the corresponding direction indicator lamp in the instrument panel.

To switch off the parking lamps, return the lighting control stalk to the middle position or switch on the ignition.

They come on when the engine is started. Depending on the country of sale, they are used for:

- daytime running lamps\* in day mode and sidelamps in night mode (they are brighter when daytime running lamps),
- or
- sidelamps in day and night mode.

### Daytime running lamps

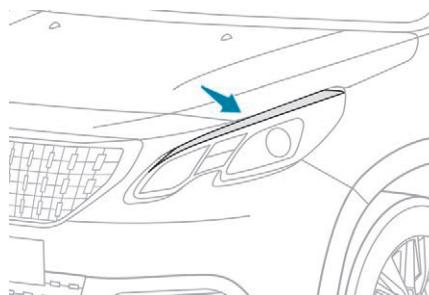
Daytime lighting, compulsory in certain countries, which comes on automatically when the engine is started making the vehicle more visible to other users.

This function is provided:

- in countries where it is imposed by regulations, by illumination of the dipped beam headlamps with the sidelamps and number plate lamps; this function cannot be deactivated.
- for other countries where it is provided, by the use of dedicated lamps (LEDs); this function can be activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

The lighting control stalk must be placed in the 0 or AUTO (day mode) position.

### LED lamps



\* This setting is done in the vehicle configuration menu.

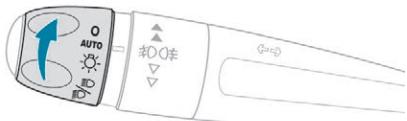
Deactivation of the daytime running lamps is effective after operation of the lighting control stalk or after the next engine start; activation is effective immediately.

The instruments and controls (instrument panel, touch screen, air conditioning control panel, etc.) are not illuminated, except in night mode with manual or automatic illumination of headlamps.

## Automatic headlamp illumination

The sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, when a low level of external light is detected or in certain cases of activation of the windscreen wipers. As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.

### Switching on



- Turn the ring to the "AUTO" position. Activation of the function is accompanied by a message in the screen.

### Switching off

- Turn the ring to another position. Deactivation of the function is accompanied by a message in the screen.

### Automatic guide-me-home lighting

Association with automatic illumination of headlamps provides the guide-me-home lighting with the following additional options:

- selection of the lighting duration of 15, 30 or 60 seconds,
- automatic activation of guide-me-home lighting when the automatic illumination of headlamps is in operation.

**MENU** The guide-me-home lighting can be configured in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu.



### Malfunction



In the event of a fault with the sunshine sensor, the lighting comes on, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel and/or a message appears in the screen, accompanied by an audible signal.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

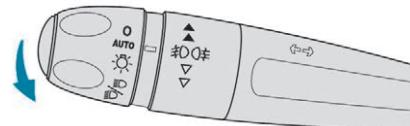


In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. In this case, the lighting will not come on automatically. Do not cover the sunshine sensor, combined with the rain sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

### Manual guide-me-home lighting

Temporarily keeping the dipped beam headlamps on after the vehicle's ignition has been switched off makes the driver's exit easier when the light is poor.

### Switching on



- With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting control stalk.
- A further "headlamp flash" switches the function off.

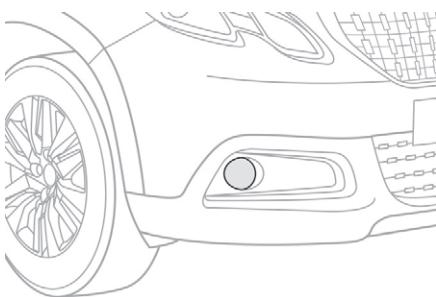


Manual guide-me-home lighting is also available from the remote control lighting button.

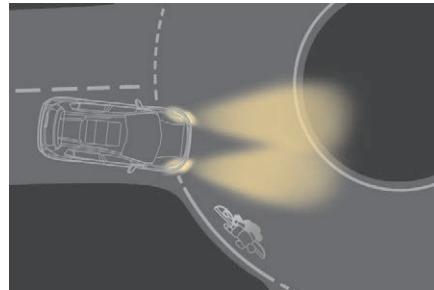
## Switching off

Manual guide-me-home lighting goes off automatically at the end of a given period of time.

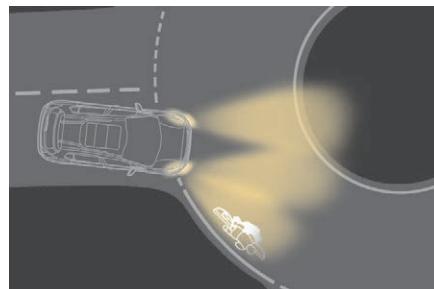
## Cornering lighting



With dipped or main beams, this system makes use of the beam from a front foglamp to illuminate the inside of a bend, when the vehicle speed is below 25 mph (40 km/h) (urban driving, winding road, intersections, parking manoeuvres, etc.).



Without cornering lighting



With cornering lighting

## Switching on

This function operates:

- when the corresponding direction indicator is switched on,
- or
- from a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.

## Switching off

The system does not operate:

- below a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel,
- above 25 mph (40 km/h),
- when reverse gear is engaged.

## Programming

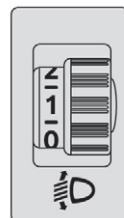
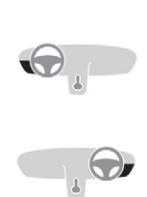
### MENU

It is possible to activate or deactivate the cornering lighting from the **Driving/Vehicle** menu. This function is activated by default.



## Headlamp beam height adjustment

To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, the height of the headlamp beams should be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.



0. 1 or 2 people in the front seats.

- Intermediate setting.
- 1. 5 people.
- 5 people + maximum authorised load.
- 2. Driver + maximum authorised load.

**i** The initial setting is position "0".

## Wiper control stalk

The vehicle's front and rear wipers are designed to improve the driver's visibility progressively according to the climatic conditions.

## Programming

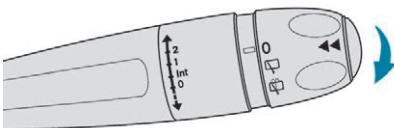
Various automatic wiper control modes are also available depending on the following options:

- automatic rain sensitive windscreens wipers,
- rear wiping on engaging reverse gear.

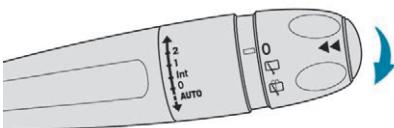
## Manual controls

The wipers are controlled directly by the driver.

### Without AUTO wiping



### With AUTO wiping



### Front wipers

Wiping speed:

**2**

Fast (heavy rain).

**1**

Normal (moderate rain).

**Int**

Intermittent (proportional to the speed of the vehicle).

**0**

Off.

**↓**

Single wipe (press down and release).

**AUTO**

Automatic (press down and release).  
Single wipe (pull the stalk briefly towards you).

### Windscreen wash

Pull the wiper stalk towards you. The windscreen wash, then the windscreen wipers, operate for a pre-determined time.



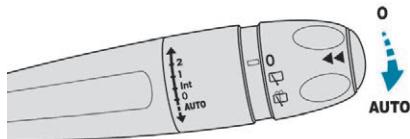
To avoid damaging the wiper blades, do not operate the screenwash if the screenwash reservoir is empty. Only operate the screenwash if there is no risk of the fluid freezing on the windscreen and hindering visibility. Always use a screenwash fluid suitable for low temperatures during the winter period. Never top up with water.

4

### Automatic windscreen wipers

The windscreen wipers operate automatically once rainfall is detected (sensor behind the rear view mirror), adapting their speed to the intensity of the rainfall without any action on the part of the driver.

## Switching on

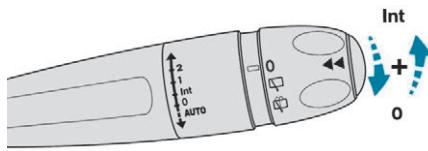


**AUTO** Push the control stalk briefly downwards.

 A wiping cycle confirms that the instruction has been accepted.

This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel and a message is displayed.

## Switching off



 Give the control stalk a brief push downwards again or move the control stalk to a different position (Int, 1 or 2).

This indicator lamp goes off in the instrument panel and a message is displayed.

 The automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers must be reactivated by pushing the control stalk downwards, if the ignition has been off for more than 1 minute.

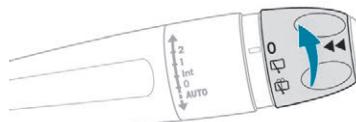
## Operating fault

If a fault occurs with the automatic rain sensitive wipers, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.

Have this checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

 Do not cover the rain sensor, combined with the sunshine sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen, behind the rear view mirror.  
When using an automatic car wash, switch off the automatic rain sensitive wipers. In winter, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic rain sensitive wipers.

## Rear wiper



 If a significant accumulation of snow or ice is present, or when using a tailgate bicycle carrier, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the vehicle configuration menu.

Rear wiper selection ring:



Off.



Intermittent wipe.



Wash-wipe (set duration).

## Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation if the windscreen wiper is operating.

## Programming

**MENU** From the **Driving/Vehicle** menu, it is possible to activate or deactivate operation of the rear wiper when reversing.

## Special position of the windscreens wipers

This position is used for cleaning or replacement of the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in winter (ice, snow), to release the wiper blades from the windscreen.

**i** To maintain the effectiveness of the wiper blades, it is advisable to:

- handle them with care,
- clean them regularly using soapy water,
- avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreens,
- replace them at the first signs of wear.

## Before removing a front wiper blade



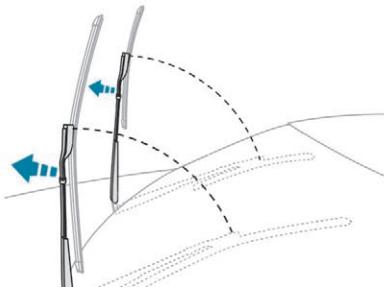
☞ In the minute following ignition switch-off, any operation of the wiper control stalk will position the wiper blades vertically.  
☞ Proceed to the desired operation or to replacement of the wiper blades.

## After refitting a front wiper blade

☞ To return the wiper blades to their initial position, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper stalk.

## Changing a wiper blade

### Removing/refitting at the front



☞ Carry out these wiper blade replacement operations from the driver's side.  
☞ Starting with the wiper blade farthest from you, hold each arm by the rigid section and lift it as far as possible.

**!** Do not touch the wiper blade in case you cause irreparable damage.  
Do not release them while moving them – Risk of damaging the windscreens!

☞ Clean the windscreens using a screenwash fluid.

**i** Do not apply "Rain X" type beading products.

☞ Unclip the worn wiper blade closest to you and remove it.  
☞ Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.  
☞ Repeat the procedure for the other wiper blade.  
☞ Starting with the wiper blade closest to you, once again hold each arm by the rigid section, then fold it carefully, guiding it to the windscreens.

### Removing/refitting at the rear

☞ Hold the arm by the rigid section and lift it as far as possible.  
☞ Clean the rear window using a screenwash fluid.  
☞ Unclip the worn wiper blade and remove it.  
☞ Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.  
☞ Once again hold the arm by the rigid section then fold it carefully, guiding it to the rear window.

## General safety recommendations

! Labels are affixed in different locations on your vehicle. They include safety warnings and vehicle identification information. Do not remove them: they are an integral part of your vehicle.

! For any work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, skills and equipment required, all of which a PEUGEOT dealer is able to provide.

! Depending on country regulations, some safety equipment may be compulsory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalysers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle, etc.

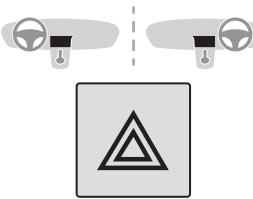
### ! We draw your attention to the following points:

- The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not approved by PEUGEOT may cause excessive current consumption and faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer for information on the range of recommended accessories.
- As a safety measure, access to the diagnostic socket, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for PEUGEOT dealers or qualified workshop, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.
- Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by PEUGEOT or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the manufacturer will result in the suspension of the legal and contractual warranties.

### ! Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters

Before installing a radio communication transmitter, you must contact a PEUGEOT dealer for the specifications of compatible transmitters (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

## Hazard warning lamps



☞ When you press this red button, all four direction indicators flash. They can operate with the ignition off.

## Automatic illumination

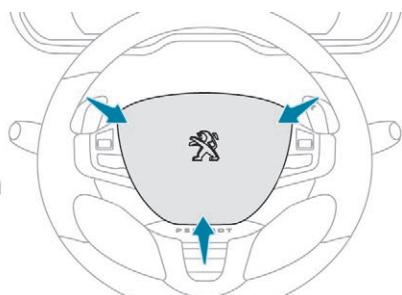
When braking in an emergency, depending on the rate of deceleration, the lamps come on automatically.

They switch off automatically when you accelerate.

☞ You can also switch them off by pressing the button.

## Horn

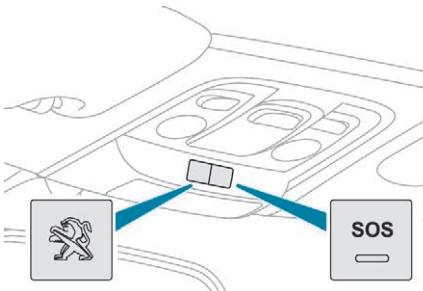
Audible warning system to alert other road users to an imminent danger.



☞ Press the central part of the multifunction steering wheel.

💡 Use the horn moderately and only in the circumstances allowed by traffic regulations in the country in which you are driving.

## Emergency or assistance call



### Peugeot Connect SOS



In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. The flashing LED and the voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "Peugeot Connect SOS" service\*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request; the LED goes off.

The LED remains on (without flashing) when communication is established. It goes off at the end of the call.

"Peugeot Connect SOS" immediately locates your vehicle and contacts you in your own language\*\*, and – if necessary – requests that relevant emergency services be dispatched\*\*. In countries where the service is not available, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is sent directly to the emergency services (112) without the vehicle location.

❗ If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, an emergency call is made automatically and independently of the deployment of any airbags.

\* In accordance with the general conditions of use for the service available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.

\*\* According to the geographic coverage of "Peugeot Connect SOS", "Peugeot Connect Assistance" and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle. The list of countries covered and PEUGEOT CONNECT services is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

## Operation of the system

When the ignition is switched on, the indicator lamp comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.

If the indicator lamp lights up continuously red: there is a system fault.

If the indicator lamp flashes red: replace the back-up battery.

In either case, emergency and assistance calls may not function.

Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

**i** The system's fault does not prevent the vehicle from being driven.

## Peugeot Connect Assistance



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.

A voice message confirms that the call has been made\*\*.

Immediately pressing this button again cancels the request.

The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

## Geolocation



You can deactivate geolocation by simultaneously pressing the "Peugeot Connect SOS" and "Peugeot Connect Assistance" buttons, followed by pressing "Peugeot Connect Assistance" to confirm.

To reactivate geolocation, simultaneously press the "Peugeot Connect SOS" and "Peugeot Connect Assistance" buttons again, followed by a press on "Peugeot Connect Assistance" to confirm.

**i** If you purchased your vehicle outside the PEUGEOT dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modify it to suit your wishes. In a multilingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

**i** For technical reasons and, in particular, to improve the quality of PEUGEOT CONNECT services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.

**i** If you benefit from the Peugeot Connect Packs offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the website for your country.

\*\* According to the geographic coverage of "Peugeot Connect SOS", "Peugeot Connect Assistance" and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle. The list of countries covered and of PEUGEOT CONNECT services is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

## Electronic stability control (ESC)

A set of the following Electronic Stability systems:

- anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD),
- emergency braking assistance (EBA),
- wheel anti-slip regulation (ASR) or traction control,
- dynamic stability control (DSC).

## Definitions

### Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

These systems improve the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking and contribute towards improved control in corners, in particular on poor or slippery road surfaces.

The ABS prevents wheel lock in the event of emergency braking.

The EBFD manages the braking pressure wheel by wheel.

### Emergency braking assistance (EBA)

In an emergency, this system enables you to reach the optimum braking pressure more quickly and therefore reduce the stopping distance.

It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed. This is felt by a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in the effectiveness of the braking.

### Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

This system optimises traction in order to avoid wheel slip by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine. It also improves the directional stability of the vehicle on acceleration.

### Dynamic stability control (DSC)

If there is a difference between the path followed by the vehicle and that required by the driver, this system monitors each wheel and automatically acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to return the vehicle to the required path, within the limits of the laws of physics.

### Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)



When this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, it indicates that there is a fault with the ABS, which could cause loss of control of the vehicle when braking.



If this warning lamp comes on together with the **STOP** warning lamp, an audible signal and a message in the screen, it indicates a malfunction of the electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) which could result in loss of control of the vehicle when braking.

**You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.**  
In both cases, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

**i** When changing wheels (tyres and rims), make sure that these are approved for your vehicle.

**i** Normal operation of the ABS system may be manifested by slight vibration on the brake pedal.

**!** **In case of emergency braking, press very strongly and do not release the braking force.**

**!** After an impact, have these systems checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Dynamic stability control (DSC)/Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

### Activation

These systems are activated automatically every time the vehicle is started. As soon as they detect a problem of grip or trajectory, these systems act on the operation of the engine and brakes.



This is indicated by this warning lamp flashing in the instrument panel.

### Deactivation

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground, etc.), it may be advisable to deactivate the ASR system, so that the wheels can turn freely and regain grip.

Reactivate the system when grip conditions allow.

**MENU** Deactivation can be configured in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu.



It is confirmed by the display of a message.

### Reactivation

The ASR system is reactivated automatically every time the ignition is switched back on or from 31 mph (50 km/h).

Below 31 mph (50 km/h), you can reactivate it manually:

**MENU** Reactivation can be configured in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu.



It is confirmed by the display of a message.

### Operating fault



If this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, this indicates a fault with the system.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

### ASR/DSC

These systems offer increased safety in normal driving, but they should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.

It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep these systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.

The correct operation of these systems depends on observation of the manufacturer's recommendations regarding as much the wheels (tyres and rims), braking and electronic components as the assembly and repair procedures used by PEUGEOT dealers.

The use of snow tyres is recommended, in order to be able to benefit from the efficiency of these systems in winter conditions.

In this case, it is essential to equip the four wheels with tyres approved for your vehicle.

## Grip control

Special patented traction control system which improves traction on snow, mud and sand. This system, the operation of which has been optimised for each situation, allows you to manoeuvre in most conditions of poor grip (encountered during passenger vehicle use).

Associated with all-seasons Peak Mountain Snow Flake tyres, this system offers a compromise between safety, grip and traction. These tyres are efficient in winter and summer conditions.

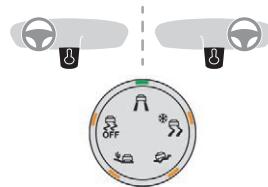
The accelerator pedal should be pressed sufficiently to allow the system to use the power of the engine. Operation at high engine speeds is completely normal.

A five-position selector knob allows you to choose the setting best suited to the driving conditions encountered.

An indicator lamp associated with each mode comes on to confirm your choice.

A specific and additional display appears temporarily in the touch screen to confirm the selection made with the knob.

## Standard (ESC)



This mode is calibrated for a low level of wheel spin, based on the different levels of grip normally encountered on the road.



☞ Place the knob in this position.

**i** Every time the ignition is switched off, the system automatically resets to this mode.

## Snow

This mode adapts its strategy to the conditions of grip encountered for each of the two front wheels on moving off.

(mode active up to 50 mph (80 km/h))



☞ Place the knob in this position.

## All terrain (mud, damp grass, etc.)

This mode, when moving off, allows considerable spin on the wheel with the least grip to optimise clearing of the mud and to regain grip. At the same time, the wheel with the most grip is controlled in such a way as to transmit as much torque as possible.

When moving, the system optimises wheel spin to respond to the driver's requirements as fully as possible.

(mode active up to 31 mph (50 km/h))



☞ Place the knob in this position.

## Sand

This mode allows little spin on the two driving wheels at the same time to allow the vehicle to move forward and limit the risks of getting stuck in the sand.

(mode active up to 75 mph (120 km/h))



☞ Place the knob in this position.

**i** Do not use the other modes on sand as the vehicle may become stuck.



You can deactivate the ASR and DSC systems by turning the knob to the "OFF" position.

The ASR and DSC systems will no longer have an effect on engine operation or the brakes in the event of an involuntary change of trajectory.

These systems are reactivated automatically from 31 mph (50 km/h) or every time the ignition is switched on.

#### Driving recommendations

Your vehicle is designed principally to drive on tarmac roads but it allows you to occasionally drive on other less passable terrain.

However, it does not permit off-road driving such as:

- crossing and driving on terrain which could damage the underbody or strip away components (fuel pipe, fuel cooler, etc.) due to obstacles or stones in particular,
- driving on terrain with steep gradients and poor grip,
- crossing a stream.

## Seat belts

### Front seat belts

The front seat belts are fitted with a pyrotechnic pretensioning and force limiting system.

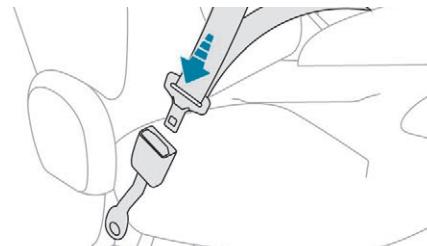
This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front or side impact.

Depending on the severity of the impact, the pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.

The pretensioning seat belts are active when the ignition is on.

The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, thus improving their protection.

### Fastening

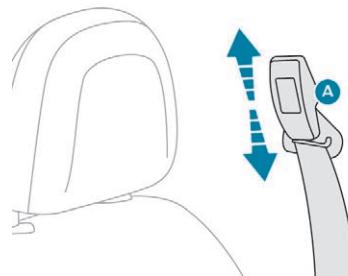


- ☞ Pull the strap then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

### Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it reels in.

### Height adjustment



- ☞ To lower the attachment point, squeeze control A and slide it downwards.
- ☞ To raise the attachment point, slide control A upwards.

### Seat belt not fastened/unfastened warning lamp in the instrument panel

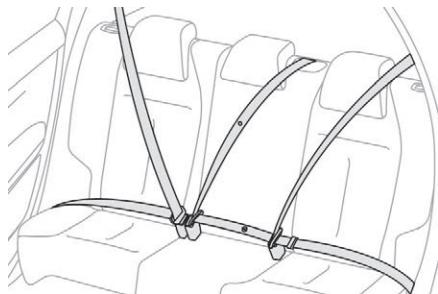


When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel.

It remains on for a certain time if the front passenger has not fastened their seat belt. Once this period has elapsed, the warning lamp goes off if the driver's seat belt is fastened.

From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h), this warning lamp flashes for 2 minutes accompanied by an audible signal of increasing volume, if the driver and/or the front passenger have not fastened their seat belt. Once these 2 minutes have elapsed, this warning lamp remains on until the driver and/or the front passenger fastens their seat belt.

## Rear seat belts



The rear seats are each fitted with a three-point seat belt.

### Fastening

- ☞ Pull the strap then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

### Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it reels in.

## Advice

**!** The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off. Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys. Do not interchange the seat belt buckles as they will not fulfil their role fully. The seat belts are fitted with an inertia reel permitting automatic adjustment of the length of the strap to your size. The seat belt is stowed automatically when not in use.

The inertia reels have an automatic locking device at the time of a collision, during sudden braking or if the vehicle turns over. You can release the device by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.

After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

### ! Installation

The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis.

The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.

In order to be effective, a seat belt must:

- be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- be used to restrain only one person,
- not show any signs of cuts or fraying,
- not be converted or modified to avoid affecting its performance.

### ! Recommendations for children

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.

Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one child.

Never allow a child to travel on your lap.

For more information on **Child seats**, refer to the corresponding section.

## ! Maintenance

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle's seat belts, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a PEUGEOT dealer is able to provide.

Have your seat belts checked regularly by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.

Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by PEUGEOT dealers.

## ! In the event of an impact

**Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impact, the pyrotechnic pretensioner may be deployed before and independently of the airbags.** Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.

Following an impact, have the seat belts system checked and, if necessary, replaced, by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

# Airbags

## General information

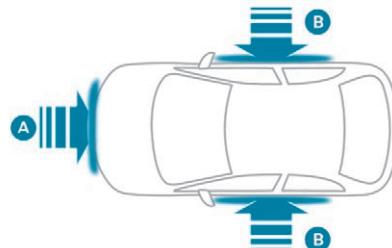
System designed to contribute towards improving passenger safety (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of violent collisions. The airbags supplement the action of the seat belts fitted with force limiters (all except the centre rear passenger). If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- in the case of a serious impact, the airbags are deployed instantly and contribute towards better protection of the occupants of the vehicle (with the exception of the rear centre passenger); immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain rollover conditions, the airbags may not be deployed; the seat belt alone contributes towards ensuring your protection in these situations.

### ! The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.

This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

## Impact detection zones



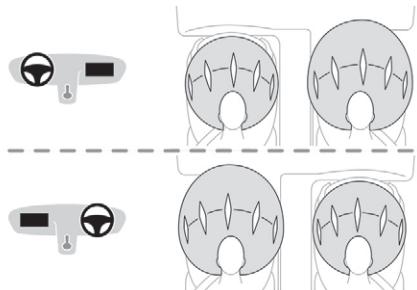
A. Front impact zone.

B. Side impact zone.

**i** The deployment of one or more airbags is accompanied by a slight emission of smoke and a noise, due to the detonation of the pyrotechnic charge incorporated in the system.

This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation. The detonation noise associated with the deployment of an airbag may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

## Front airbags



This system protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a severe frontal impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the head and chest.

The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.

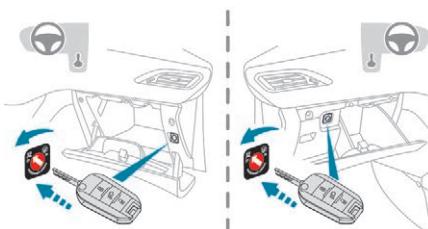
### Deployment

The airbags are deployed, except the front passenger airbag if it has been deactivated, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the front impact zone **A**, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.

The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger's side, to cushion their forward movement.

### Deactivation

Only the front passenger airbag can be deactivated.



- ☞ **With the ignition off**, introduce the key into the passenger airbag deactivation switch.
- ☞ Turn it to the "**OFF**" position.
- ☞ Remove the key, leaving the switch in this position.

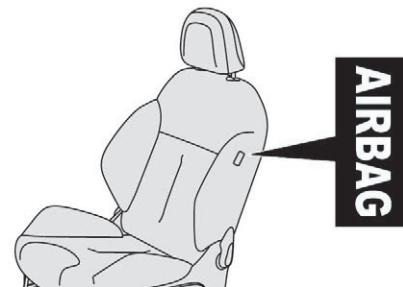
 When the ignition is on, this warning lamp  comes on in the instrument panel and stays on while the airbag is deactivated.

**!** To assure your child's safety, you must deactivate the front passenger airbag when you install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed.

### Reactivation

When you remove the "rearward facing" child seat, **with the ignition off**, turn the switch to the ON position to reactivate the airbag and so assure the safety of your front passenger in the event of an impact.

## Lateral airbags



This system protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a severe side impact to minimise the risk of injury to the chest, between hip and shoulder. Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, door side.

## Deployment

The lateral airbag is deployed unilaterally in the event of a severe side impact covering all or part of side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The lateral airbag inflates between the hip and shoulder of the front passenger and the corresponding door trim panel.

## Curtain airbags

System contributing towards greater protection for the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head.

Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

## Deployment

The curtain airbag is deployed at the same time as the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The curtain airbag inflates between the front or rear occupant of the vehicle and the windows.

## Operating fault



If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, you must contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.



In the event of a minor impact or bump on the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbag may not be deployed.

In the event of a rear or front collision, the airbag is not deployed.

## Advice

**! For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below.**

Adopt a normal and upright sitting position.

Fasten your seat belt, ensuring it is positioned correctly.

Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object, etc.), nor fix or attach anything close to or in the way of the airbag release trajectory; this could cause injuries during their deployment.

Never modify the original definition of your vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.

After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen or broken into, have the airbag systems checked.

All work on the airbag systems must be carried out by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an airbag is deployed cannot be ruled out.

The airbag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

### ! Front airbags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.

Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.

Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.

Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.

Do not fix or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, this could cause injuries with deployment of the airbags.

### ! Curtain airbags

Do not fix or attach anything to the roof, as this could cause head injuries when the curtain airbag is deployed.

If fitted to your vehicle, do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

### ! Lateral airbags

Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment of the lateral airbags. For information on the product range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer. Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backrests (clothes, etc.) as this could cause injuries to the thorax or arm when the lateral airbag is deployed.

Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary. The vehicle's front door panels include side impact sensors.

A damaged door or any unauthorised or incorrectly executed work (modification or repair) on the front doors or their interior trim could compromise the operation of these sensors – risk of malfunction of the lateral airbags!

Such work must only be done by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## General points relating to child seats

**i** The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- In accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings.
- **Statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats.**
- **A child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the "rearward facing" position both in the front and in the rear.**

**i** **It is recommended** that children travel on the **rear seats** of your vehicle:

- "rearward facing" up to the age of 3,
- "forward facing" over the age of 3.

! Ensure that the seat belt is positioned and tightened correctly.

For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in firm and steady contact with the floor.

At the front: if necessary, adjust the passenger seat.

At the rear: if necessary, adjust the relevant front seat.

! Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest on a passenger seat.

Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

## Child seat at the rear

### "Rearward facing"



When a "rearward facing" child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the "rearward facing" child seat does not touch the vehicle's front seat.

### "Forward facing"



When a "forward facing" child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the "forward facing" child seat do not touch the vehicle's front seat.

### Child seat at the front

#### "Rearward facing"



When a "rearward-facing" child seat is installed **on the front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat to:

- the intermediate longitudinal position, with the backrest straightened for a seat without height adjuster,
- the intermediate longitudinal position and highest position, with the backrest straightened for a seat with height adjuster.

! The passenger airbag must be deactivated. Otherwise, **the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed**.

### "Forward facing"



When a "forward-facing" child seat is installed **on the front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat to:

- the intermediate longitudinal position, with the backrest straightened for a seat without height adjuster,
- the intermediate longitudinal position and highest position, with the backrest straightened for a seat with height adjuster.

The passenger airbag must remain activated.

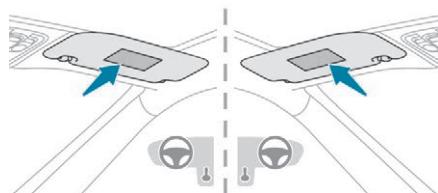


**Passenger seat adjusted to the intermediate longitudinal and highest position.**

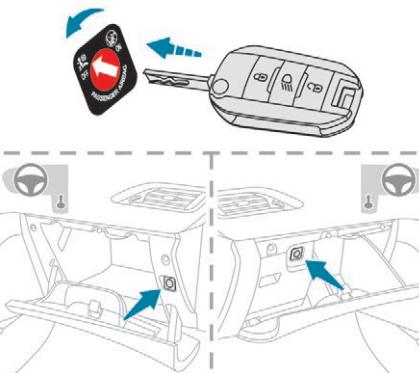
## Deactivating the front passenger airbag

! Never install a "rearward facing" child restraint system on a seat protected by an active front airbag. This could cause the death or serious injury of the child.

The warning label present on both sides of the passenger sun visor repeats this advice.  
In line with current legislation, the following tables contain this warning in all of the languages required.



## Passenger airbag OFF



Only the front passenger airbag can be deactivated.

- ☞ **With the ignition off**, introduce the key into the passenger airbag deactivation switch.
- ☞ Turn it to the "**OFF**" position.
- ☞ Remove the key, leaving the switch in this position.

When the ignition is on, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and stays on while the airbag is deactivated.

For more information on the **Airbags**, refer to the corresponding section.

AR	لا يجب أبداً تركيب نظام لإنجاح الطفل الوجه باتجاه الوراء على مقعد سيارة مجهز بوسادة أمان هولانية أمامية مغلقة، فقد يؤدي هذا إلى التسبب بموت الطفل أو باصابات خطيرة لديه.
BG	НИКОГА НЕ инсталирайте детско столче на седалка с АКТИВИРАНА предна ВЪЗДУШНА ВЪЗГЛАВНИЦА. Това може да причини СМЪРТ или СЕРИОЗНО НАРАНЯВАНЕ на детето.
CS	NIKDY neumisťujte dětské zádržné zařízení orientované směrem dozadu na sedadlo chráněné AKTIVOVANÝM čelním AIRBAGEM. Hrozí nebezpečí SMRTI DÍTĚTE nebo VÁZNÉHO ZRANĚNÍ.
DA	Brug ALDRIG en bagudvendt barnestol på et sæde, der er beskyttet af en AKTIV AIRBAG. BARNET risikerer at blive ALVORLIGT KVÆSTET eller DRÆBT.
DE	Montieren Sie auf einem Sitz mit AKTIVIERTEM Front-Airbag NIEMALS einen Kindersitz oder eine Babyschale entgegen der Fahrtrichtung, das Kind könnte schwere oder sogar tödliche Verletzungen erleiden.
EL	Μη χρησιμοποιείτε ΠΟΤΕ παιδικό κάθισμα με την πλάτη του προς το εμπρός μέρος του αυτοκινήτου, σε μια θέση που προστατεύεται από ΜΕΤΩΠΙΚΟ αερόσακο που είναι ΕΝΕΡΓΟΣ. Αυτό μπορεί να έχει σαν συνέπεια το ΘΑΝΑΤΟ ή το ΣΟΒΑΡΟ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟ του ΠΑΙΔΙΟΥ
EN	NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
ES	NO INSTALAR NUNCA un sistema de retención para niños de espaldas al sentido de la marcha en un asiento protegido mediante un AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO, ya que podría causar lesiones GRAVES o incluso la MUERTE del niño.
ET	Ärge MITTE KUNAGI paigaldage "seljaga sõidusuunas" lapsestet juhi kõrvalistmele, mille ESITURVAPADI on AKTIVEERITUD. Turvapadja avanemine võib last TÖSISELT või ELUOHTLIKULT vigastada.
FI	ÄLÄ KOSKAAN aseta lapsen turvaistuinta selkä ajosuuntaan istuimelle, jonka edessä suojana on käytöön aktivoitu TURVATYYNY. Sen laukeaminen voi aiheuttaa LAPSEN KUOLEMAN tai VAKAVAN LOUKKAANTUMISEN.
FR	NE JAMAIS installer de système de retenue pour enfants faisant face vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE frontal ACTIVÉ. Cela peut provoquer la MORT de l'ENFANT ou le BLESSER GRAVEMENT.
HR	NIKADA ne postavljati dječju sjedalicu leđima u smjeru vožnje na sjedalo zaštićeno UKLJUČENIM prednjim ZRAČNIM JASTUKOM. To bi moglo uzrokovati SMRT ili TEŠKU OZLJEDU djeteta.
HU	SOHA ne használjon menetiránynak háttal beszerelt gyermekülést AKTIVÁLT (BEKAPCSOLT) FRONTLÉGZSÁKKAL védettülésen. Ez a gyermek HALÁLÁT vagy SÚLYOS SÉRÜLÉSÉT okozhatja.
IT	NON installare MAI seggiolini per bambini posizionati in senso contrario a quello di marcia su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG frontale ATTIVATO. Ciò potrebbe provocare la MORTE o FERITE GRAVI al bambino.

LT	NIEKADA nejrenkite vaiko prilaikymo priemonés su atgal atgręžtu vaiku ant sédynés, kuri saugoma VEIKIANČIOS priekinés ORO PAGALVÉS. Išsiskleidus oro pagalvei vaikas gali būti MIRTINAI arba SUNKIAI TRAUMUOTAS.
LV	NEKAD NEuzstādiet uz aizmuguri vērstu bērnu sēdekļi priekšējā pasažiera sēdvietā, kurā ir AKTIVIZĒTS priekšējais DROŠĪBAS GAISA SPILVENS. Tas var izraisīt BĒRNA NĀVI vai radīt NOPIETNUS IEVAINOJUMUS.
MT	Qatt m'ghandek thalli tifel/tifla marbut f'siggu dahru lejn l-Airbag attiva, għaliex tista' tikkawwa koriment serju jew anke mewt lit-tifel/tifla
NL	Plaats NOOIT een kinderzitje met de rug in de rijrichting op een zitplaats waarvan de AIRBAG is INGESCHAKELD. Bij het afgaan van de airbag kan het KIND LEVENSGEVAARLIJK GEWOND RAKEN
NO	Installer ALDRI et barnesete med ryggen mot kjøreretninga i et sete som er beskyttet med en frontal AKTIVERT KOLLISJONSPUTE, BARNET risikerer å bli DREPT eller HARDT SKADET.
PL	NIGDY nie instalować fotelika dziecięcego w pozycji "tyłem do kierunku jazdy" na siedzeniu wyposażonym w CZOŁOWĄ PODUSZKĘ POWIETRZNĄ w stanie AKTYWNYM. Może to doprowadzić do ŚMIERCI DZIECKA lub spowodować u niego POWAŻNE OBRAŻENIA CIAŁA.
PT	NUNCA instale um sistema de retenção para crianças de costas para a estrada num banco protegido por um AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO. Esta instalação poderá provocar FERIMENTOS GRAVES ou a MORTE da CRIANÇA.
RO	Nu instalati NICIODATA un sistem de retinere pentru copii, dispus cu spatele in directia de mers, pe un loc din vehicul protejat cu AIRBAG frontal ACTIVAT. Aceasta ar putea provoca MOARTEA COPILULUI sau RANIREA lui GRAVA.
RU	ВО ВСЕХ СЛУЧАЯХ ЗАПРЕЩАЕТСЯ использовать обращенное назад детское удерживающее устройство на сиденье, защищенному ФУНКЦИОНИРУЮЩЕЙ ПОДУШКОЙ БЕЗОПАСНОСТИ, установленной перед этим сиденьем. Это может привести к ГИБЕЛИ РЕБЕНКА или НАНЕСЕНИЮ ЕМУ СЕРЬЕЗНЫХ ТЕЛЕСНЫХ ПОВРЕЖДЕНИЙ
SK	NIKDY neinštalujte detské zádržné zariadenie orientované smerom dozadu na sedadlo chránené AKTIVOVANÝM čelným AIRBAGOM. Mohlo by dôjsť k SMRTEL'NÉMU alebo VÁZNEMU PORANENIU DIEŤAŤA.
SL	NIKOLI ne nameščajte otroškega sedeža s hrbtom v smeri vožnje, če je VARNOSTNA BLAZINA pred sprednjim sopotnikovim sedežem AKTIVIRANA. Takšna namestitev lahko povzroči SMRT OTROKA ali HUDE POŠKODBE.
SR	NIKADA ne koristite dečje sedište koje se okreće unazad na sedištu zaštićenim AKTIVNIM VAZDUŠNIM JASTUKOM ispred njega, jer mogu nastupiti SMRT ili OZBILJNA POVREDA DETETA.
SV	Passagerarkrockkudden fram MÄSTE vara avaktiverad om en bakåtvänd bilbarnstol installeras på denna plats. Annars riskerar barnet att DÖDAS eller SKADAS ALLVARLIGT.
TR	KESİNLİKLE HAVA YASTIĞI AKTİF olan ön koltuğa yüzü arkaya dönük bir çocuk koltuğu yerleştirmeyiniz. Bu ÇOCUĞUN ÖLMESİNE veya ÇOK AĞIR YARALANMASINA sebep olabilir.

## Child seats recommended by PEUGEOT

PEUGEOT offers a range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three-point seat belt**.

### Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg



L1

"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus"  
Installed in the "rearward facing" position.

### Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg



L5

"RÖMER KIDFIX XP"

Can be secured to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings.

The child is restrained by the seat belt.

### Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg



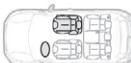
L6

"GRACO Booster"

The child is restrained by the seat belt.

## Locations for child seats secured using the seat belt

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved (a) in relation to the weight of the child and the seat in the vehicle.

Seat position		Weight of the child/indicative age				
		Under 13 kg (groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to about 1 year old	From 9 to 18 kg (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old	From 15 to 25 kg (group 2) From about 3 to 6 years old	From 22 to 36 kg (group 3) From about 6 to 10 years old	
Front passenger seat (c)						
- with height adjustment	 	<b>U(R)</b>	<b>U(R)</b>	<b>U(R)</b>	<b>U(R)</b>	
		<b>U</b>	<b>U</b>	<b>U</b>	<b>U</b>	
Outer rear seats (d)		<b>U</b>	<b>U</b>	<b>U</b>	<b>U</b>	
Centre rear seat		<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	

- (a) Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.
- (b) Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Carrycots and "car" infant carriers cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.
- (c) Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing your child in this seat.

- (d) When installing a child seat on a rear seat in a "rearward facing" or "forward facing" position, move the front seat forward then straighten the backrest to allow enough room for the child seat and the child's legs.

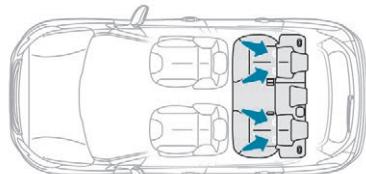
- U:** seat suitable for installing a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved for "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing" use.

**U(R):** As for **U**, with the vehicle seat adjusted to the highest and the intermediate longitudinal position.

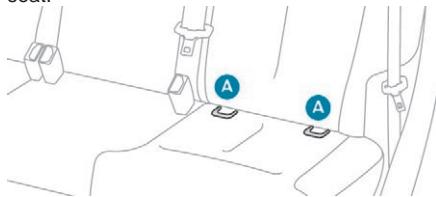
**X:** seat not suitable for installing a child seat of the weight group indicated.

## ISOFIX mountings

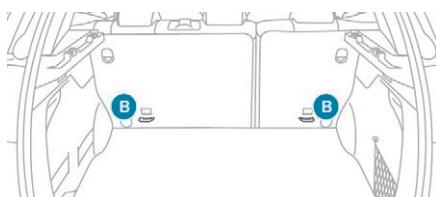
The seats, shown below, are fitted with ISOFIX compliant mountings:



The mountings comprise three rings for each seat:



- two rings **A**, located between the vehicle's seat backrest and cushion, indicated by a marking,



- a ring **B**, located behind the seat, referred to as the **TOP TETHER**, for fixing the upper strap.

The TOP TETHER is used to secure the upper strap of child seats that have one. This arrangement reduces forward tipping of the child seat in the event of a front impact. This ISOFIX mounting system provides fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.

**ISOFIX child seats** are fitted with two latches which are secured on the two rings **A**. Some seats also have an **upper strap**, which is secured on ring **B**.

To secure the child seat to the TOP TETHER:

- ☞ remove and store the head restraint before installing the child seat in this seat (refit it once the child seat has been removed),
- ☞ run the strap of the child seat behind the top of the seat backrest, centring it between the holes for the head restraint rods,
- ☞ attach the hook of the upper strap to ring **B**,
- ☞ tighten the upper strap.

**i** When fitting an ISOFIX child seat to the left-hand rear position of the bench seat, before fitting the seat, first move the centre rear seat belt towards the middle of the vehicle, so as to avoid interference with the operation of the seat belt.

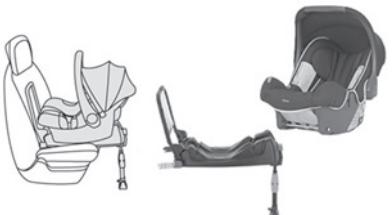
! The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the protection of the child in the event of an accident. Strictly observe the fitting instructions provided with the child seat.

**i** For information on the possibilities for installing ISOFIX child seats in your vehicle, refer to the summary table.

## ISOFIX child seats recommended by PEUGEOT

PEUGEOT offers a range of ISOFIX child seats listed and type approved for your vehicle.

**i** Also consult the installation notes of the child seat's manufacturer to find out how to install and remove the seat.

<p><b>" RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus and its ISOFIX base"</b> (size category: <b>E</b>)</p> <p><b>Group 0+:</b> from birth to 13 kg</p>  <p>Installed "rearward facing" using an ISOFIX base which is attached to rings <b>A</b>. The base has a height adjustable support leg that rests on the vehicle's floor. This child seat can also be secured with a seat belt. In this case, only the child seat body is used and must be secured to the vehicle's seat by the three-point seat belt.</p>
---

<p><b>"Baby P2C Midi and its ISOFIX base"</b> (size categories: <b>D, C, A, B, B1</b>)</p> <p><b>Group 1:</b> from 9 to 18 kg</p>  <p>Installed "rearward facing" using an ISOFIX base which is attached to rings <b>A</b>. The base has a height adjustable support leg that rests on the vehicle's floor. This child seat can also be used "forward facing". This child seat <b>cannot</b> be secured with a seat belt. We recommend that you use the seat in the "rearward facing" position up to the age of 3 years.</p>
---

<p><b>"RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX"</b> (size category: <b>B1</b>)</p> <p><b>Group 1:</b> from 9 to 18 kg</p>  <p>Installed only in the "forward facing" position. Attaches to rings <b>A</b> and also ring <b>B</b>, referred to as the Top Tether, using an upper strap. 3 child seat body angles: sitting, reclining and lying down. This child seat can also be used on seats not equipped with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be secured to the vehicle's seat by the three-point seat belt. Adjust the front seat of the vehicle so that the child's feet do not touch the backrest.</p>
--

<p><b>"FAIR G 0/1 S and its RWF A ISOFIX base"</b> (size category: <b>C</b>)</p> <p><b>Group 0+ and 1: from birth to 18 kg</b></p>  <p>Installed "rearward facing". Is installed using an ISOFIX base attached to rings <b>A</b>. 6 child seat body angles. Use the <b>type A rearward facing (RWF)</b> ISOFIX base. This child seat can also be used in the "forward facing" position on seating positions not fitted with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, the child seat body must be secured to the vehicle's seat by the three- point seat belt.</p>
---

## Locations for ISOFIX child seats

In line with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on the vehicle seats fitted with ISOFIX mountings.

In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.

		Weight of the child/indicative age									
		Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months old		Under 10 kg (group 0) Under 13 kg (group 0+) Up to about 1 year old			From 9 to 18 kg (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old				
Type of ISOFIX child seat		Carrycot		Rearward facing			Rearward facing		Forward facing		
ISOFIX size category		F	G	C	D	E	C	D	A	B	B1
Front passenger seat		Not ISOFIX									
Outer rear seats		X		IL-SU*	IL-SU		IL-SU*	IL-SU	IUF IL-SU		
Centre rear seat		Not ISOFIX									

\* Vehicle seat in a specific position: move the seats in front of the child seat forward.

**IUF:** seat suitable for installing an Isofix Universal seat, "Forward facing", secured using the upper strap.

**IL-SU:** seat suitable for the installation of an Isofix Semi-Universal seat which can be:

- "rearward facing" fitted with an upper strap or a support leg,
- "forward facing" fitted with a support leg,
- a carrycot fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.

For securing the upper strap, refer to the section on "**Isofix mountings**".

**X:** seat not suitable for installing a child seat of the weight group indicated.

## Advice

**!** The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the protection of the child in the event of an accident.

Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilise it.

Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harness keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.

When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the seat of your vehicle. If your passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.

**The head restraint must be removed before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat.**

Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint when the child seat is removed.

### **!** Children at the rear

At rear seating positions, always leave sufficient space between the front seat and:

- a "rearward facing" child seat,
- the child's feet for a child seat fitted "forward facing".

To do this, move the front seat forwards and, if necessary, straighten its backrest.

For optimal installation of the "forward facing" child seat, verify that its backrest is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle seat, if possible in contact with it.

### **!** Children at the front

The legislation on carrying children on the front passenger seat is specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.

Deactivate the front passenger airbag when a "rearward facing" child seat is installed on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, there is a risk of serious or fatal injury to the child if the airbag is deployed.

### **!** Installing a booster seat

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.

Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs. We recommend using a booster seat with a backrest, equipped with a belt guide at shoulder level.

### **!** Additional protections

To prevent accidental opening of the rear doors and windows, use the child lock.

Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.

To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

As a safety precaution, do not leave:

- a child or children alone and unattended in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

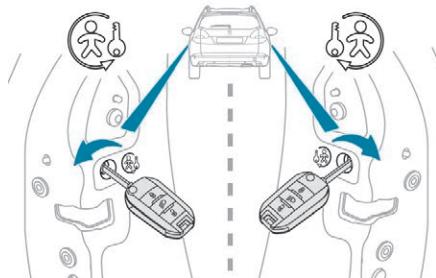
## Child lock

### Mechanical system

Mechanical system to prevent opening of a rear door using its interior control.

The control is located on the edge of each rear door.

### Locking



☞ Using the ignition key, turn the red control as far as it will go:

- to the left on the left-hand rear door,
- to the right on the right-hand rear door.

### Release

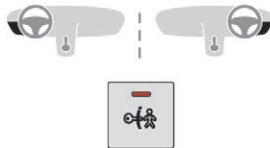
☞ Using the ignition key, turn the red control as far as it will go:

- to the right on the left-hand rear door,
- to the left on the right-hand rear door.

## Electric system

Electric system for locking the rear doors so that they cannot be opened using their interior controls.

### Activation



☞ With the ignition on, press this button. The red indicator lamp in the button comes on, accompanied by a message confirming the activation. This red indicator lamp remains on for as long as the child lock is activated. Opening the doors from the outside and operation of the electric rear windows from the driver's controls remain possible.

### Deactivation

☞ With the ignition on, press this button again. The indicator lamp in the button goes off, accompanied by a message to confirm deactivation.

This indicator lamp remains off while the child lock is switched off.

! Any other state of the indicator lamp indicates a fault with the electric child lock. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! This system is independent and in no circumstances does it take the place of the central locking control. Check the status of the child lock each time you switch on the ignition. Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

## Driving recommendations

Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions. Pay close attention to the traffic and keep your hands on the wheel so that you are ready to react at any time to any eventuality. As a safety measure, the driver should only carry out any operations that require close attention when the vehicle is stationary. On a long journey, a break every two hours is strongly recommended. In difficult weather, drive smoothly, anticipate the need to brake and increase the distance from other vehicles.

**!** Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. There is a risk of poisoning and death!

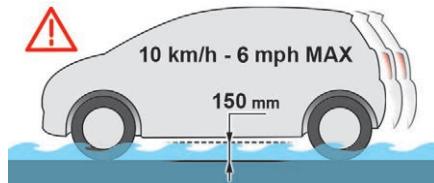
In very severe wintry conditions (temperatures below -23°C), to guarantee correct operation and the longevity of the mechanical elements of your vehicle (engine and gearbox) the engine must be left running for 4 minutes before driving.

## Important!

**!** Never drive with the parking brake applied – Risk of overheating and damage to the braking system!

As the exhaust system of your vehicle is very hot, even several minutes after switching off the engine, never park or run the engine on inflammable surfaces (dry grass, fallen leaves, etc.) – Risk of fire!

**!** Never leave a vehicle unsupervised with the engine running. If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P**, depending on the type of gearbox.



If you are obliged to drive through water:

- check that the depth of water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other road users,
- deactivate the Stop & Start function,
- drive as slowly as possible without stalling. Under no circumstances exceed 6 mph (10 km/h),
- do not stop and do not switch off the engine. On leaving the flooded road, as soon as circumstances allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads. If in doubt about the state of your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Driving on flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine or gearbox, as well as to the electrical systems of your vehicle.

## In case of towing

**!** Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and requires extra care from the driver.

## Side wind

- ☞ Take into account the increased sensitivity to wind.

## Cooling

Towing a trailer on a slope increases the temperature of the coolant.

As the fan is electrically controlled, its cooling capacity is not dependent on the engine speed.

- ☞ To lower the engine speed, reduce your speed.

The maximum towable load on an incline depends on the gradient and the exterior temperature.

In all cases, keep a check on the coolant temperature.



- ☞ If this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

### ! New vehicle

Do not pull a trailer before having driven at least approximately 600 miles (1,000 kilometres).

**i** If the exterior temperature is high, it is recommended that the engine is allowed to idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to facilitate its cooling.

## Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance. To avoid overheating of the brakes, the use of engine braking is recommended.

## Tyres

- ☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

## Lighting

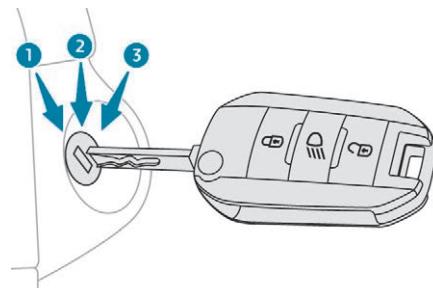
- ☞ Check the electrical lighting and signalling on the trailer and the headlamp beam height of your vehicle.

**i** For more information on **Headlamp beam height adjustment**, refer to the corresponding section.

**i** The rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically to avoid the audible signal if a genuine PEUGEOT towing system is used.

## Starting/Switching off the engine

### Ignition switch



1. **Stop** position.

2. **Ignition on** position.

3. **Start** position.

**i** Avoid attaching heavy objects to the key or the remote control, which would weigh down on its blade in the ignition switch and could cause a malfunction.

## Starting the engine

Parking brake applied:

- ☞ With a **manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral then depress the clutch pedal fully.

- With an **automatic gearbox**, place the gear selector in mode **N** or **P** then depress the brake pedal fully.
- With an **electronic gearbox**, place the gear selector in mode **N** then depress the brake pedal fully.
- Insert the key into the ignition switch; the system recognises the code.
- Unlock the steering column by simultaneously turning the steering wheel and the key.

**i** In certain cases, you may have to apply significant force to move the steering wheel (wheels on full lock, for example).

- With a **petrol engine**, operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine is running, release the key.

**i** With **petrol engines**, after a cold start, preheating the catalytic converter can cause clearly-felt engine vibrations when stationary, with the engine running, for anything up to two minutes (accelerated idle speed).

- With a **Diesel engine**, turn the key to position **2**, ignition on, to operate the engine preheating system.



Wait until this warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel, then operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine is running, release the key.

**i** In wintry conditions, the warning lamp may stay on for a longer period. When the engine is hot, the warning lamp does not come on.

**!** If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition. Wait a few moments before operating the starter motor again. If the engine does not start after several attempts, do not keep trying: you risk damaging the starter motor or the engine. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

**i** In temperate conditions, do not let the engine idle to warm up but move off straight away and drive at moderate speed.

**!** Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. There is a risk of poisoning and death!

In very extreme wintry conditions (temperature below -23°C), to guarantee correct operation and the longevity of the mechanical elements of your vehicle (engine and gearbox), the engine must be left running for 4 minutes before starting the vehicle.

## Electronic immobiliser

The original key contains a coded electronic chip. When the ignition is switched on, starting is only possible if the code is detected and recognised.

This anti-theft protection locks the engine management system a few moments after the ignition is switched off and prevents starting of the engine following a break-in.

**!** In the event of a fault, you are informed by the illumination of this warning lamp in the instrument panel, the emission of an audible signal and the display of a message.

In this case, your vehicle will not start; contact a PEUGEOT dealer as soon as possible.

**i** Keep away from your vehicle, the label attached to the keys given to you on handover of the vehicle. It will help in finding the original code for replacement of the key.

## Switching off the engine

- ☞ Immobilise the vehicle.
- ☞ With the engine running at idle, turn the key to position **1**.
- ☞ Remove the key from the ignition switch.
- ☞ To lock the steering column, turn the steering wheel until it locks.

**i** To facilitate unlocking of the steering column, it is recommended that the wheels be returned to the straight ahead position before switching off the engine.

- ☞ Check that the parking brake is correctly applied, particularly on sloping ground.

**!** Never switch off the ignition before the vehicle is at a complete stop. With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also cut off: risk of loss of control of the vehicle.

**i** When you leave the vehicle, keep the key with you and lock the vehicle.

### Free-wheeling

For safety reasons, do not free-wheel. Otherwise, some vehicle functions will no longer be active.

**!** Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

## Energy economy mode

After switching off the engine (position **1 – Stop**), for a maximum of 30 minutes you can still use functions such as the audio and telematics system, the wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc.

**i** For more information on **Energy economy mode**, refer to the corresponding section.

### Key left in

If the key has been left in the ignition switch at position **2 (Ignition on)**, the ignition will be switched off automatically after one hour.

To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **1 (Stop)**, then back to position **2 (Ignition on)**.

## Parking brake Application

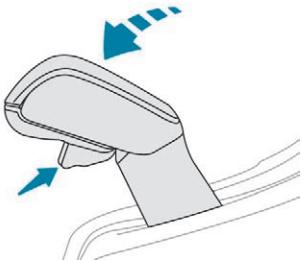


6

- ☞ Pull the parking brake lever up to immobilise your vehicle.

**i** On level ground, it is not necessary to pull the parking brake lever all the way up.

## Release



☞ **With your foot on the brake pedal**, pull the parking brake lever up gently, press the trigger, then lower the lever fully.

**(!)** When driving the vehicle, if this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, associated with an audible signal and a message, this means that the parking brake is still applied or has not been fully released.

**!** When parking on a steep slope, direct your wheels against the kerb, apply the parking brake, engage a gear opposite to the direction the vehicle is facing and switch off the ignition.

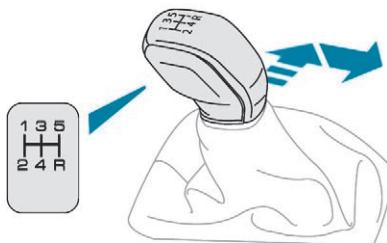
On return to the vehicle, remember that a gear had been engaged before starting the engine.

**!** If excessive travel of the parking brake or a loss of effectiveness of this system is noticed, the parking brake must be checked, even between two services. Checks of this safety-related system must be carried by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

**i** As a safety precaution and to aid engine start-up:

- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

## 5-speed manual gearbox Engaging reverse gear



☞ Move the gear lever to the right then pull it back.

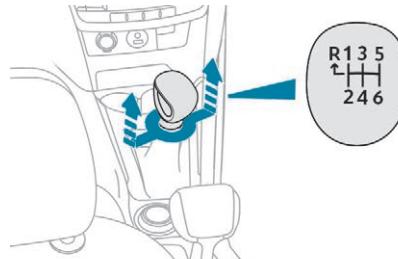
**!** Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

## 6-speed manual gearbox Engaging 5<sup>th</sup> or 6<sup>th</sup> gear

☞ Move the gear selector fully to the right to engage 5<sup>th</sup> or 6<sup>th</sup> gear.

**!** Failure to follow this advice could cause permanent damage to the gearbox (inadvertent engagement of 3<sup>rd</sup> or 4<sup>th</sup> gear).

## Engaging reverse gear



☞ Raise the ring under the knob and move the gear selector to the left then forwards.

❗ Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

ℹ As a safety precaution and to aid engine start-up:  
 - always select neutral,  
 - press the clutch pedal.

## Electronic gearbox (ETG6)

6-speed electronically controlled gearbox which offers a choice between the ease of automated operation or the pleasure of manual gear changing.

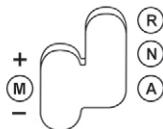
There are two driving modes:

- **automated** mode for automatic control of the gears by the gearbox,
- **manual** mode for sequential gear changing by the driver.

In automated mode, it remains possible to change gear manually by using the steering mounted control paddles when required, when overtaking, for example.

❗ Do not drive with your hand permanently resting on the gear selector, as there is a risk of damaging the gearbox.

## Gear selector



- R. Reverse.  
 ☞ With your foot on the brake, lift the selector and push forwards.
- N. Neutral.  
 ☞ With your foot on the brake, select this position to start the engine.
- A. Automatic mode.  
 ☞ Move the selector backwards to select this mode.
- M. +/- . Manual mode with sequential gear changing.  
 ☞ Move the selector to the left to select this mode, then:
  - push forwards to change up a gear,
  - or pull backwards to change down a gear.

## Steering mounted controls



- +. Change up paddle.  
 ☞ Pull the steering-mounted + control paddle towards you to change up.
- . Change down paddle.  
 ☞ Pull the steering-mounted - control paddle towards you to change down.

ℹ The steering mounted control paddles do not allow neutral to be selected, nor reverse gear to be engaged or disengaged.

## Display in the instrument panel

### Gear selector positions



**N.** Neutral.

**R.** Reverse.

**1 2 3 4** Gears in manual mode.

**5 6.**

**AUTO.** This comes on when selecting automatic mode. It switches off on changing to sequential mode.



Place your **foot on the brake** when this warning lamp is flashing (for example, when starting the engine).

**i** There is an audible signal upon engagement of reverse.

### Starting the vehicle

>To start, place the selector at position **N**.

- Press the brake pedal down fully.
- Start the engine.

**i** If the engine does not start:



- if **N** flashes in the instrument panel, move the selector to position **A**, then to position **N**,
- if the "Foot on the brake" message appears, press the brake pedal harder.

- Select a mode (position **A** – automatic or **M** – manual) or reverse (position **R**).
- Release the parking brake.
- Take your foot off the brake pedal, then accelerate.

**AUTO** and **1**, **2** or **R** appears in the instrument panel screen.

### Automatic mode

- After starting the vehicle, select position **A** to change to automatic mode.

**AUTO** and the gear engaged appear in the instrument panel screen.



The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any action needed from the driver. It continuously selects the gear best

adapted to the following parameters:

- style of driving,
- profile of the road.

**i** For optimum acceleration, for example when overtaking another vehicle, press the accelerator pedal firmly past the point of resistance.

### Manual gear change



This one-off gear change makes it possible to overtake, for example, while remaining in automatic mode.

- Operate the **+** or **-** steering mounted control paddle.

The gearbox engages the gear selected if the engine speed allows it. **AUTO** remains displayed in the instrument panel.

After a few moments with no action on the control paddles, the gearbox returns to automatic operation.

## Manual mode

- ☞ After starting the vehicle, select position **M** to change to manual mode.
- ☞ Pull the selector towards the **+** sign to change up a gear.
- ☞ Push the selector towards the **-** sign to change down a gear.



The gears engaged appear successively in the instrument panel screen.

The gear change instructions are only carried out if the engine speed permits.

It is not necessary to release the accelerator when changing gear.

When braking or slowing down, the gearbox changes down automatically to allow the vehicle to accelerate in the correct gear.

**i** At very low speed, if reverse gear is requested, this will only be taken into account when the vehicle is immobilised. A warning lamp appears in the instrument panel screen.

**!** On sharp acceleration, the gearbox will not change up unless the driver acts on the steering mounted paddles. Never select neutral **N** while the vehicle is moving. Only engage reverse gear **R** when the vehicle is immobilised with the brake pedal pressed.

## Malfunction



With the ignition on, the flashing of this warning lamp and the flashing of **AUTO**, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the instrument panel screen, indicates a malfunction of the gearbox.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



**!** You must press the brake pedal fully when starting the engine.

In all parking situations, you must apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle.

6

## Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, you can choose to:

- move to position **N** to engage neutral,
- leave the vehicle in gear; in this case the vehicle cannot be moved.

In both cases, you must apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle.

**!** When immobilising the vehicle, with the engine running, you must place the gear selector at neutral **N**.

Before doing anything in the engine compartment, make sure that the gear selector is in neutral **N** and the parking brake is applied.

## Automatic gearbox (EAT6)

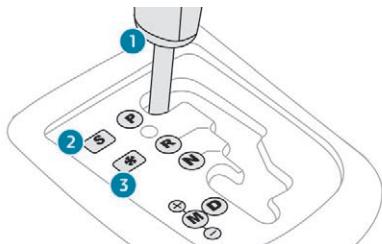
6-speed automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the ease of fully automatic operation, enhanced by sport and snow programmes, or manual gear changing.

Two driving modes are available:

- **automatic** operation for electronic control of the gears by the gearbox, with a **sport** programme for a more dynamic style of

driving and a **snow** programme to improve driving when traction is poor,  
 - **manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.

## Gearbox panel



1. Gear selector.
2. "S" (sport) button.
3. "※" (snow) button.

## Gear selector positions

**P.** Park.

- Vehicle immobilised, parking brake applied or released.
- Starting the engine.

**R.** Reverse.

- Reversing manoeuvres, vehicle stationary, engine at idle.

**N.** Neutral.

- Vehicle immobilised, parking brake applied.
- Starting the engine.

**D.** Automatic operation.

**M +/-.** Manual operation with sequential changing of the 6 gears.

- ☞ Push forwards to change up through the gears.  
or
- ☞ Pull backwards to change down through the gears.

**D.** Drive (Automatic operation).

**S.** **Sport** programme.

**※.** **Snow** programme.

**1 2 3 4** Gears engaged during manual operation.

**5 6.** Invalid value in manual mode.

## Displays in the instrument panel



When you move the selector to select a position, the corresponding indicator is displayed in the instrument panel.

**P.** Parking.

**R.** Reverse.

**N.** Neutral.

## Starting the vehicle

 With your foot on the brake pedal, select position **P** or **N**.

☞ Start the engine.  
If these conditions are not met, you will hear an audible signal, accompanied by the display of a warning message.

☞ With the engine running, press the brake pedal.

☞ Release the parking brake.

☞ Select position **R**, **D** or **M**.

☞ Gradually release the brake pedal.  
The vehicle moves off immediately.

**i** If position **N** is selected inadvertently while driving, allow the engine to return to idle, then select position **D** before accelerating.

**i** If the temperature is below -23°C, the engine should be left at idle for four minutes, to ensure the correct operation and the service life of the engine and gearbox.

**!** When the engine is running at idle with the brakes released, if position **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves even without the accelerator being pressed.  
Never leave children unattended in the vehicle when the engine is running.  
When carrying out maintenance with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **P**.

For maximum acceleration without touching the selector, press the accelerator fully down (kick-down). The gearbox changes down automatically or holds the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached.  
When braking, the gearbox changes down automatically to provide effective engine braking.

If you release the accelerator sharply, the gearbox will not shift to a higher gear for safety reasons.

**!** Never select position **N** while the vehicle is moving.  
Never select positions **P** or **R** unless the vehicle is completely stationary.

## Automatic operation

☞ Select position **D** for **automatic** changing of the six gears.  
The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any intervention on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear according to the style of driving, the profile of the road and the load in the vehicle.

## Reverse gear

When selecting reverse **R** with the ignition on, the rear parking sensors are activated automatically.  
For more information on the **Parking sensors**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Sport and snow programmes

These two special programmes supplement the automatic operation in very specific conditions of use.

## Sport programme "S"

☞ With the engine running, press button "**S**".  
The gearbox automatically favours a dynamic style of driving.



**S** appears in the instrument panel.

## Snow programme

☞ With the engine running, press button "".  
The gearbox adapts to driving on slippery roads.  
This programme improves starting and handling when traction is poor.



 appears in the instrument panel.

6

**i** At any time, press the selected button again to quit the programme engaged and return to auto-adaptive mode.

## Manual operation

☞ Select position **M** for **sequential** changing of the six gears.  
☞ Move the selector towards the **+** sign to change up a gear.

- Move the selector towards the - sign to change down a gear.

Gears are shifted only if the vehicle's speed and engine speed allow; otherwise, the gearbox will operate temporarily in automatic mode.



**D** disappears and the gears engaged appear in succession in the instrument panel.

If the engine is under-revving or over-revving, the gear selected flashes for a few seconds, then the actual gear engaged is displayed. It is possible to change from position **D** (automatic) to position **M** (manual) at any time. When the vehicle is stationary or crawling, the gearbox engages first gear automatically.



The sport and snow programmes are inactive in manual mode.

## Invalid value during manual operation



This symbol is displayed if a gear is not engaged correctly (selector between two positions).

## Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, you can engage position **P** or **N** to place the gearbox in neutral. In both cases, apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle.



If the selector is not in position **P**, when the driver's door is opened or approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off, a warning message appears on the screen.

- Return the selector to position **P**; the message disappears.

When driving on flooded roads or when crossing a ford, proceed at walking pace.

Do not exceed 62 mph (100 km/h), local speed restrictions permitting.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.



! There is a risk of damage to the gearbox:

- if you press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time,
- if you force the selector from position **P** to another position when the battery is flat.



To reduce fuel consumption when at a prolonged standstill with the engine running (traffic jam, etc.), put the selector in position **N** and apply the parking brake.

## Malfunction



When the ignition is on, the lighting of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a warning message on the screen, indicates a gearbox fault.

In this case, the gearbox switches to back-up mode and is locked in 3<sup>rd</sup> gear. You may feel a substantial jolt when changing from **P** to **R** and from **N** to **R**. This will not cause any damage to the gearbox.

## Gear shift indicator

System which reduces fuel consumption by advising the driver when to change up.

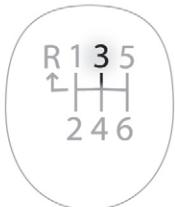
## Operation

Depending on the driving situation and the equipment of your vehicle, the system may recommend you to skip one (or several) gear(s). You can follow this instruction without engaging the intermediate gears.

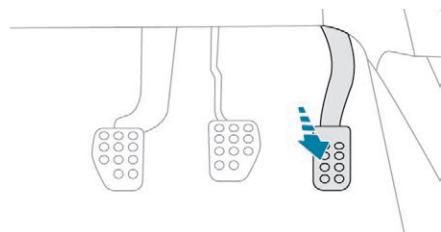
Gear engagement recommendations are only optional. In fact, the configuration of the road, the traffic density and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. Therefore, the driver remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the system's advice.

This function cannot be deactivated.

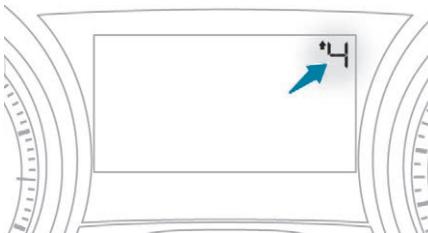
Example:



- You are in third gear.



- You press the accelerator pedal.



- The system may suggest that you engage a higher gear.

The information appears in the instrument panel in the form of an arrow.

**i** With a manual gearbox, the arrow may be accompanied by the gear recommended.

**i** The system adapts its gear change recommendation according to driving conditions (slope, load, etc.) and driver actions (power demand, acceleration, braking, etc.).

The system never suggests:

- engaging first gear,
- engaging reverse gear,
- engaging a lower gear.

**i** With an electronic or automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual mode.

## Hill start assist

System which keeps your vehicle immobilised temporarily (approximately 2 seconds) when starting on a gradient, the time it takes to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

This system only operates when:

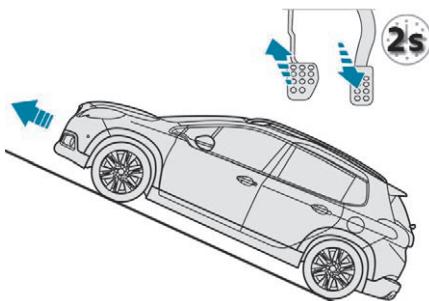
- the vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal,
- certain conditions of gradient are met,
- the driver's door is closed.

**!** Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held temporarily by hill start assist.

If you need to leave the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually. Then ensure that the parking brake warning lamp lights up constantly in the instrument panel.

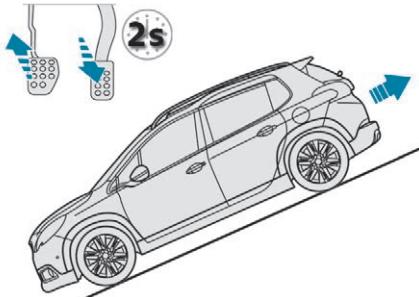
**!** The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated. However, use of the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle interrupts its operation.

## Operation



**Uphill, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal:**

- If you are in first gear or neutral with a manual gearbox\*.
- If you are in position **A** or **M** with an electronic gearbox.
- If you are in position **D** or **M** with an automatic gearbox.



**Downhill, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal.**

## Malfunction



If a fault in the system occurs, these warning lamps come on. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

## Stop & Start

The Stop & Start system puts the engine temporarily into standby – STOP mode – during stops in the traffic (red lights, traffic jams, etc.). The engine restarts automatically – START mode – as soon as you want to move off. Restart is instantaneous, quick and silent. Perfect for urban use, the Stop & Start system reduces fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.

\* Depending on version.

## Operation

### Going into engine STOP mode

**ECO** The "ECO" indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine goes into standby:

- for the **e-HDi Diesel** engine, at speeds below 12 mph (20 km/h), when you place the gear selector in neutral and you release the clutch pedal.
- for the **PureTech petrol** and **BlueHDi Diesel** engines, when the vehicle is stationary.



A time counter adds up the STOP mode activation periods during a trip. It is reset to zero every time the ignition is switched on using the key.

**i** For your comfort, during parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear. Stop & Start does not modify the functions of the vehicle, such as braking, power steering, etc.

! Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition using the key.

## Special cases: STOP mode not available

STOP mode is not activated when:

- the driver's door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start using the key,
- the engine is needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment,
- demisting is active,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, exterior temperature, etc.) where the engine is needed for control of the system.

! The "ECO" indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then stops.

This operation is perfectly normal.

## Going into engine START mode

**ECO** The ECO indicator lamp goes off and the engine restarts:

- with a **manual gearbox**, when you depress the clutch pedal.
- with an **electronic/automatic gearbox**:
  - gear selector in position **A/D** or **M**, when you release the brake pedal,
  - or gear selector in position **N** and brake pedal released, when you place the gear selector in position **A/D** or **M**,
  - or when you engage reverse.

With a manual gearbox in STOP mode, if a gear is engaged without fully depressing the clutch pedal, an alert message is displayed asking you to depress the clutch pedal to restart the engine.

## Special cases: START mode activated automatically

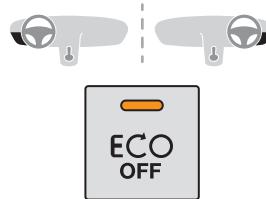
As a safety or convenience measure, START mode is activated automatically when:

- you open the driver's door,
- you unfasten the driver's seat belt,
- the speed of the vehicle exceeds 7 mph (11 km/h) with an electronic gearbox,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, air conditioning setting, etc.) where the engine is needed for control of the system or vehicle.

! The "ECO" indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then stops.

This operation is perfectly normal.

## Manual deactivation



In certain circumstances, such as the need to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment, it may be preferable to deactivate the Stop & Start system. The system can be deactivated at any time, once the ignition is switched on.

At any time, press the "ECO OFF" switch to deactivate the system.

This is confirmed by the indicator lamp in the switch coming on accompanied by a message in the screen.

! If the system has been deactivated in STOP mode, the engine restarts immediately.

## Manual reactivation

Press the "ECO OFF" switch again. The system is active again; this is confirmed by the indicator lamp in the switch going off, accompanied by a message in the screen.

**i** The system is reactivated automatically at every new start using the key.

### ! Opening the bonnet



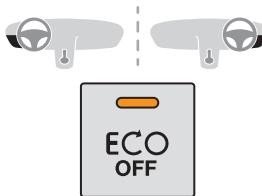
Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid the risk of injury related to an automatic change to START mode.

### ! Driving on flooded roads

Before driving in a flooded area, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system.

For more information on **Driving recommendations**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

## Operating fault



In the event of a malfunction with the system, the "ECO OFF" indicator lamp in the switch flashes, then comes on continuously. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of a fault in STOP mode, the vehicle may stall: all the instrument panel warning lamps come on. It is then necessary to switch off the ignition, then restart with the key.

**!** Stop & Start requires the use of a 12 V battery of special specification and technology.

All work on this type of battery must be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Under-inflation detection

This system automatically monitors the tyre pressures while driving.

The system monitors the pressure in all four tyres, once the vehicle is moving.

It compares the information given by the wheel speed sensors with **reference values**, which must be reinitialised after every tyre pressure adjustment or wheel change.

The system triggers an alert as soon as it detects a drop in the pressure of one or more tyres.

**!** The tyre under-inflation detection system does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

This system still requires you to check the tyre inflation pressure (including the spare wheel) every month as well as before a long journey.

Driving with under-inflated tyres impairs handling, extends braking distances and causes premature tyre wear, particularly in adverse conditions (heavy loads, high speeds, long journeys).



Driving with under-inflated tyres increases fuel consumption.

! The tyre pressure specifications for your vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label.

For more information on the **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

Tyre pressures should be checked when the tyres are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speeds). Otherwise (when hot), add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.

## Under-inflation alert



This warning is indicated by fixed illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and, depending on the equipment installed, a message displayed on the screen.

- ☞ Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and sudden braking.
- ☞ Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

! The loss of pressure detected does not always cause visible bulging of the tyre. Do not satisfy yourself with just a visual check.

- ☞ In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment), or
- ☞ if you have a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check the pressures of the four tyres when cold, or
- ☞ if it is not possible to carry out this check immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.

! The alert is kept active until the system is reinitialised.

! The under-inflation alert can only be relied on if the reinitialisation of the system has been done with the pressures in the four tyres correctly adjusted.

## Reinitialisation

The system must be reinitialised after any adjustment to the pressures of one or more tyres, and after changing one or more wheels.

! Before reinitialising the system, ensure that the pressures of the four tyres are correct for the conditions of use of the vehicle and conform to the recommendations on the tyre pressure label.

The under-inflation alert can only be relied on if the reinitialisation of the system has been done with the pressures in the four tyres correctly adjusted.

The under-inflation detection system does not give a warning if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.

## With touch screen

Reinitialisation of the system is done with the ignition on and the vehicle stationary.

**MENU** The reinitialisation of the system is configured in the **"Driving/Vehicle"** menu.



- ☞ Press **"Under-inflation initialisation"**.
- ☞ Confirm the instruction by pressing **"Yes"**, an audible signal and a message confirm the reinitialisation.

! The new pressure parameters saved are treated as reference values by the system.

### **i** Snow chains

The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

## Malfunction



The flashing and then fixed illumination of the under-inflation warning lamp, accompanied by the illumination of the Service warning lamp, indicates a fault with the system.

In this case, under-inflation monitoring of the tyres is no longer assured.

Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

**i** After any intervention on the system, the pressures of the four tyres must be checked and the system reinitialised.

## Speed limiter

System which prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver.

Once the speed limit is reached, the accelerator pedal no longer has any effect.

The speed limiter is **switched on** manually: the programmed speed must be at least 19 mph (30 km/h).

The speed limiter is **switched off** by manual operation of the control.

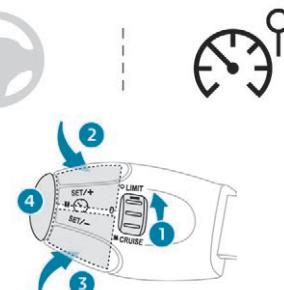
The programmed speed can be exceeded temporarily by pressing the accelerator pedal firmly.

To return to the programmed speed, simply slow down to a speed below the programmed speed.

The programmed speed remains in the system memory when the ignition is switched off.

**i** The speed limiter system cannot in any circumstances replace the need to observe speed limits or the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

## Steering mounted controls



1. Speed limiter mode selection/off.
2. Increases the set value.
3. Decreases the set value.
4. Speed limiter on/pause.

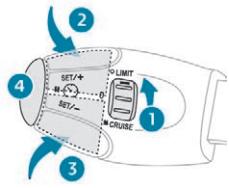
## Displays in the instrument panel



The programmed information is grouped together in the instrument panel screen.

5. Speed limiter on/off indication.
6. Speed limiter mode selection indication.
7. Programmed speed value.
8. Selection of a memorised speed setting.

## Programming



☞ Turn the dial 1 to the "LIMIT" position: speed limiter mode is selected but is not switched on (II).

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.



☞ Set the speed value by pressing button 2 or 3.

You can then change the programmed speed using buttons 2 and 3:

- by + or - 1 mph (1 km/h) = short press,
- by + or - 5 mph (5 km/h) = long press,
- in steps of + or - 5 mph (5 km/h) = maintained press.



☞ Switch the speed limiter on by pressing button 4.

☞ Switch the speed limiter off by pressing button 4: the display confirms that it has been switched off (II).



☞ Switch the speed limiter back on by pressing button 4 again.

## Exceeding the programmed speed

Pressing the accelerator pedal in order to exceed the programmed speed will have no effect unless you press the pedal **firmly** beyond the **point of resistance**.



The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the programmed speed, which is still displayed, flashes.

Returning to the programmed speed, by means of intentional or unintentional deceleration of the vehicle, automatically cancels the flashing of the programmed speed.

## Exiting speed limiter mode

☞ Turn the dial 1 to the 0 position: the speed limiter mode is deselected. The display returns to the total mileage recorder.

## Malfunction



In the event of a speed limiter fault, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- never place one mat on top of another.

## Cruise control

System which automatically maintains the speed of the vehicle at the value programmed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.

Cruise control is **switched on** manually: it requires a minimum speed of at least 25 mph (40 km/h) and the engagement of:

- fourth gear on a manual gearbox.
- second gear on an automatic or electronic gearbox, in sequential mode.
- position **A** on an electronic gearbox or position **D** on an automatic gearbox.

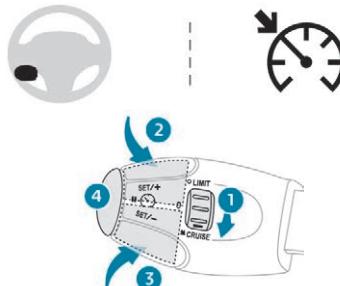
The cruise control is **switched off** manually or by pressing the brake or clutch pedal or on triggering of the electronic stability system for safety reasons.

It is possible to exceed the programmed speed temporarily by depressing the accelerator pedal.

To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal.

Switching off the ignition cancels any programmed speed setting.

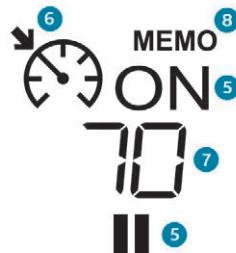
## Steering mounted controls



1. Cruise control mode selection/off.
2. Increases the set value.
3. Decreases the set value.
4. Cruise control pause/resume.

**i** The cruise control system cannot in any circumstances replace the need to observe speed limits or the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

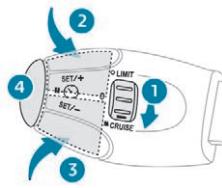
## Displays in the instrument panel



The programmed information is grouped together in the instrument panel screen.

5. Cruise control off/resume indication.
6. Cruise control mode selection indication.
7. Programmed speed value.
8. Selection of a memorised speed setting.

## Programming



☞ Turn the dial 1 to the "CRUISE" position: cruise control mode is selected but is not switched on (II).



☞ Set the programmed speed by accelerating to the required speed, then press button 2 or 3.

You can then change the programmed speed using buttons **2** and **3**:

- by + or - 1 mph (1 km/h) = short press,
- by + or - 5 mph (5 km/h) = long press,
- in steps of + or - 5 mph (5 km/h) = maintained press.



☞ Switch off the cruise control by pressing button **4**: the display confirms that it has been switched off (II).



☞ Switch the cruise control back on by pressing button **4** again.

## Exceeding the programmed speed



Intentional or unintentional exceeding of the programmed speed results in flashing of this speed in the display.

Returning to the programmed speed, by means of intentional or unintentional deceleration of the vehicle, automatically cancels the flashing of the programmed speed.

## Exiting cruise control mode

☞ Turn the dial **1** to the **0** position: the cruise control mode is deselected. The display returns to the total mileage recorder.

## Malfunction



In the event of a cruise control fault, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** When the cruise control is switched on, be careful if you hold down one of the programmed speed modification buttons: this may result in a very rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

Do not use the cruise control on slippery roads or in heavy traffic.

When descending a steep hill, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- never place one mat on top of another.

## Memorising speeds

This function allows speed settings to be stored that will then be offered for configuration of two systems: speed limiter or cruise control.

You can memorise up to five speed settings in the system for each of the two systems.

By default, some speed settings are already memorised.

## With touch screen

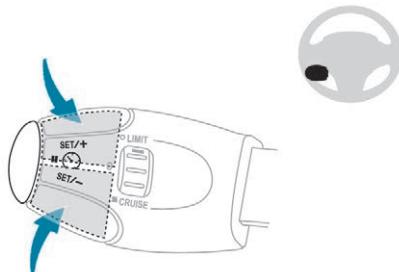
**MENU** This memorisation can be configured from the **Driving/Vehicle** menu.



- ☞ Select the "**Driving functions**" tab.
- ☞ Select the "**Adjusting Speeds**" function.
- ☞ Press "**ON**" to activate the function.
- ☞ Tick the speed settings **1** to **5** that you want to change.
- ☞ Select the speed setting value you want to change.
- ☞ Enter the new value using the numerical keypad and press "**OK**" to confirm.

! As a safety measure, the driver must carry out these operations when stationary.

## Selection



To select a memorised speed:

- ☞ Press and hold the "+" or "-" button; the system stops at the nearest memorised speed.
- ☞ Press and hold the "+" or "-" button again to select another memorised speed.

A reminder of the speed and the state of the system (on/off) is displayed in the instrument panel.

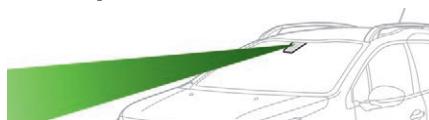
## Active City Brake

Active City Brake is a driving assistance system that aims to avoid a frontal collision or reduce the speed of an impact if the driver does not react or does not react sufficiently (inadequate brake application).

! This system has been designed to improve driving safety. The driver must always check the traffic and assess the relative distance and speed of other vehicles. Active City Brake cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

! Never look at the laser sensor through an optical instrument (magnifying glass, microscope, etc.) at a distance of less than 10 centimetres: risk of eye injury!

## Principle



Using a laser sensor located at the top of the windscreen, this system detects a vehicle running in the same direction or stopped ahead of your vehicle.

If necessary, the vehicle's braking system is operated automatically to avoid a collision with the vehicle ahead.

! Automatic braking occurs later than if done by the driver, so as to intervene only when there is a high risk of collision.

## Conditions of activation

Active City Brake functions if the following conditions are met:

- the ignition is on,
- the vehicle is moving forward,
- the speed is between about 3 and 19 mph (5 and 30 km/h),
- the braking assistance systems (ABS, EBFD, EBA) have not failed,
- the trajectory control systems (ASR, DSC) are not deactivated or faulty,
- the vehicle is not making a sharp turn,
- the system has not triggered in the last ten seconds.

## Operation

When your vehicle is too close to or approaches the vehicle ahead too quickly, the system automatically applies the brakes to avoid a collision.

You are then warned by the display of a message.

Your vehicle's brake lamps are lit to warn other users.

! The collision can be avoided if the speed difference between your vehicle and the one ahead is not more than 9 mph (15 km/h). Above this threshold, the system will do what is possible to avoid or reduce the accident by lowering the speed of impact.

The automatic braking can bring the vehicle to a complete stop if the situation requires it. In this case, the vehicle is held stationary temporarily (for about 1.5 seconds) to allow the driver to take back control by pressing the brake pedal.

**i** Unless the driver presses the clutch pedal quickly enough during automatic braking, triggering of the system may cause the engine to stall.

**i** During automatic braking, the driver can always obtain a higher rate of deceleration than that controlled by the system, by pressing firmly on the brake pedal.

**!** After an impact, the system is automatically put out of service: it no longer operates.

You must go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system made operational again.

## Operating limits

The system only detects vehicles that are stationary or moving in the same direction as your vehicle.

**!** It does not detect small vehicles (bicycles, motorcycles), pedestrians or animals, nor non-reflective stationary objects.

This system will not trigger or will be interrupted if the driver:

- accelerates hard
- or turns the steering wheel sharply (avoidance manoeuvre).

**!** When weather conditions are difficult (extremely heavy rain, snow, fog, hail, etc.), braking distances increase, which may reduce the system's ability to avoid a collision.

The driver must therefore remain particularly cautious.

**!** Never let snow build up on the bonnet or any object beyond the bonnet or the front of the roof: this could enter the field of vision of the sensor and obstruct detection.

## Activation/Deactivation

### MENU

With the touch screen, it is possible to configure activation or deactivation of the Active City Brake from the **Driving/Vehicle** menu.



Its state is memorised when the ignition is switched off.



When the system is deactivated, a message is displayed every time the ignition is switched on, to warn you.

## Operating faults

### Sensor fault

The operation of the laser sensor may suffer interference from accumulations of dirt or misting of the windscreens. In this case you are warned by the display of a message.

Use windscreens demisting and regularly clean the area of the windscreens in front of the sensor.



Do not stick or otherwise attach any object on the windscreens in front of the sensor.

## System fault

In the event of a malfunction of the system, you are warned by an audible signal and the display of the message "**Automatic braking system fault**".

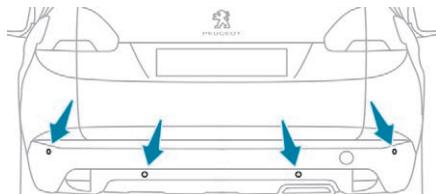
Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** In the event of an impact to the windscreen close to the sensor, deactivate the system and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have your windscreen replaced.

**!** Do not attempt to remove, adjust or test the sensor.  
Only a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop is able to work on the system.

**!** When towing a trailer or when the vehicle is being towed, the system must be deactivated.

## Parking sensors



Using sensors located in the bumper, this function warns of the proximity of obstacles (e.g. pedestrian, vehicle, tree, barrier) entering their field of detection.

**!** This function is a manoeuvring aid which cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. The driver must remain attentive and stay in control of their vehicle. They must always check the vehicle's surroundings before undertaking a manoeuvre. During the entire manoeuvre, the driver must ensure that the space remains clear.

## Rear parking sensors

The system is switched on by engaging reverse gear.

This is confirmed by an audible signal. The system is switched off when you come out of reverse gear.

## Audible assistance

*BIP... BIP... BIP...*



The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle.

The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) indicates the side on which the obstacle is located.

When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than approximately thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous.

## Visual assistance



It supplements the audible signal by displaying bars in the screen which move progressively closer to the vehicle (white: obstacles furthest away, orange: close obstacles and red: very close obstacles).

When the obstacle is very close, the "Danger" symbol is displayed in the screen.

## Front parking sensors

In addition to the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle is still below 6 mph (10 km/h).

The front parking sensors are interrupted if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if an obstacle is no longer detected or when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

**i** The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) locates the obstacle in relation to the vehicle – in the vehicle trajectory, in front or behind.

It is only available with Park Assist. For more information on **Park Assist**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Deactivation/activation of the front and rear parking sensors

### With touch screen

**MENU** The deactivation or activation of the function is done in the **Driving / Vehicle** menu.



**i** The function will be deactivated automatically if a trailer is being towed or a bicycle carrier is fitted (vehicle fitted with a towing system or bicycle carrier recommended by PEUGEOT).

## Operating limits

- Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or no longer be detected during the manoeuvre.
- Sounds such as those emitted by noisy vehicles and machinery (e.g. lorries, pneumatic drills, etc.) may interfere with the vehicle's sensors.
- Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.
- Accumulated snow or dead leaves on the road surface can interfere with the vehicle's sensors.

- A front or rear impact to the vehicle can distort the settings of the sensors, which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be incorrect.
- The tilting of the vehicle if the boot is very loaded can affect the distance measurements.
- The sensors may be affected by poor weather conditions (heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall, etc.).

## Maintenance recommendations

**i** In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow. When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.

### High pressure jet wash

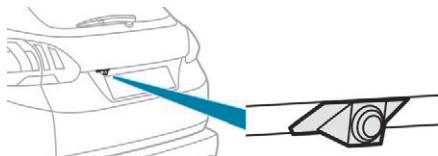
When washing your vehicle, keep the lance at least 30 cm away from the sensors.

## Malfunction

If a fault occurs when shifting to reverse, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message and an audible signal (short beep).

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

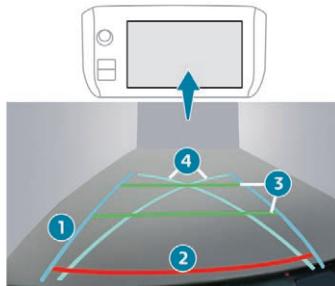
## Reversing camera



The reversing camera is activated automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

Depending on version, the image is displayed on the touch screen or in the instrument panel.

The reversing camera function may be supplemented with parking sensors.



The representation with overlaid lines helps with the manoeuvre.

They are represented as lines marked "on the ground" and do not indicate the position of tall obstacles (e.g. other vehicles.) relative to the vehicle.

**i** Some distortion of the image is normal. It is normal to have a part of the number plate showing in the bottom of the screen.

The blue lines **1** represent the general direction of the vehicle (the difference corresponds to the width of your vehicle with the mirrors).

The red line **2** represents a distance of about 30 cm beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.

The green lines **3** represent distances of about one and two metres beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.

The turquoise blue curves **4** represent the maximum turning circle.

**!** The reversing camera cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

**i** Opening the tailgate causes the display to disappear.

## Maintenance

**i** Clean the reversing camera regularly using a soft, dry cloth.

### High pressure jet washing

When washing your vehicle, do not direct the lance within 30 cm of the camera lens.

## Park Assist

The system detects a parking space and then provides assistance with parallel parking manoeuvres.

It controls the steering and provides visual and audible information to the driver.

If you have a manual gearbox, the driver manages acceleration, braking, the use of gears and the clutch.

If you have an electronic or automatic gearbox, the driver manages acceleration, braking and the use of gears.

The driver can take control at any time by gripping the steering wheel.

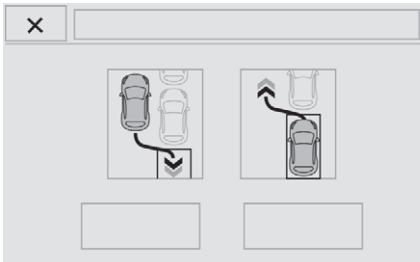
**!** The Park Assist system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.  
The driver must remain in control of their vehicle ensuring that the space remains clear during the manoeuvre.  
In some circumstances, the sensors may not detect small obstacles located in their blind spots.

**!** During manoeuvring phases, the steering wheel performs rapid turns: do not hold the steering wheel, do not put your hands between the spokes of the steering wheel. Watch out for any object that could block the manoeuvre (loose clothing, scarves, ties, etc.) – Risk of injury!

**i** For entry into a parallel parking space, the system does not detect spaces which are clearly much smaller or larger than the size of the vehicle.  
The "Parking sensors" function activates automatically during the manoeuvres, it is therefore possible that a warning lamp illuminates on the screen, accompanied by an audible signal, without affecting the parking.

**i** Changing tyre sizes (out-size tyres, winter tyres, etc.) can interfere with the correct operation of the parking assistance system.

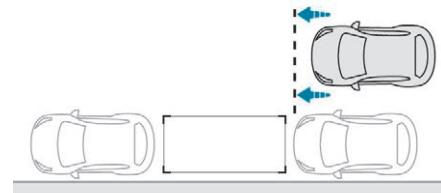
**i** When the Park Assist is active, it prevents Stop & Start going into STOP mode. In STOP mode, activating Park Assist restarts the engine.



The system provides assistance in entering and exiting a parking space when parallel parking.

## Entering a parallel parking space

**☞** Once you have detected an available space, limit the speed of the vehicle to 12 mph (20 km/h).



**☞** Position your vehicle before this space.

To activate the Park Assist system:



**☞** Press this control.  
The indicator lamp in the control remains off.

A message is displayed in the screen.

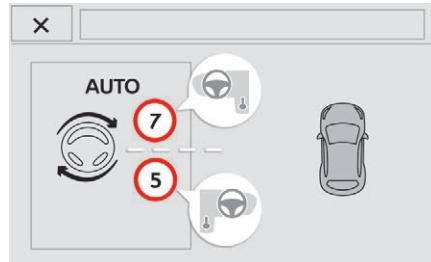
**☞** Select the enter parking space manoeuvre.  
The indicator lamp in the control comes on.



- Operate the direction indicator on the parking side.



- Move your vehicle forward until a new message is displayed.



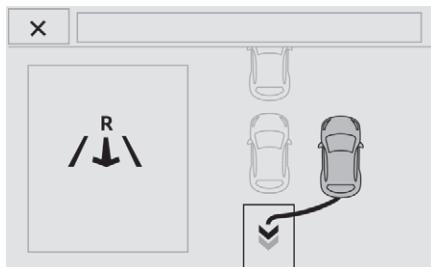
The assisted parking manoeuvre is in progress. Without exceeding 4 mph (7 km/h), continue the manoeuvres following the information given by the "Parking sensors" system, until the end of manoeuvre message is displayed.

The indicator lamp in the control goes off, accompanied by an audible signal.



- Move forwards alongside the parking space at a speed below 12 mph (20 km/h) to measure it, keeping at a distance of between 0.5 and 1.5 metres from the row of parked vehicles.

Once measurement is complete, if the space is large enough a message indicates that parking is possible.



- Select reverse and release the steering wheel.



The driver takes back control of the vehicle's steering.

## Exit from a parallel parking space

- When you want to exit from a parallel parking space, start the engine.

With the vehicle stationary, to activate the Park Assist system:

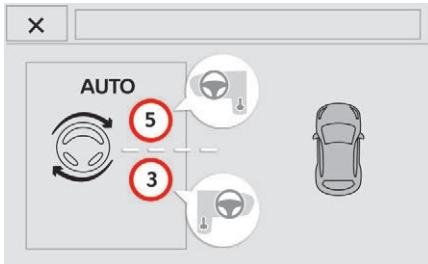


- Press this control.

The indicator lamp in the control remains off.

A message is displayed in the screen.

- Select the exit parking space manoeuvre. The indicator lamp in the control comes on.
- Operate the direction indicator on the exit from parking side. The direction indicator lamp in the instrument panel flashes throughout the manoeuvre, whatever the position of the control stalk.
- Select a forward or reverse gear then release the steering wheel.

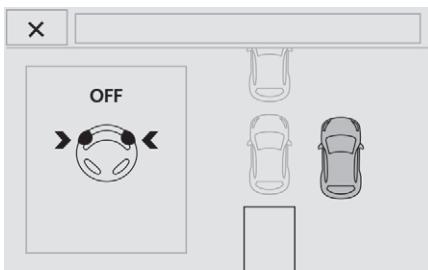


The assisted exit from parking manoeuvre is in progress.

Without exceeding 3 mph (5 km/h), continue the manoeuvres following the information given by the "Parking sensors" system, until the end of manoeuvre message is displayed.

The manoeuvre is complete once the front wheels of the vehicle are out of the parking space.

The indicator lamp in the control goes off, accompanied by an audible signal.



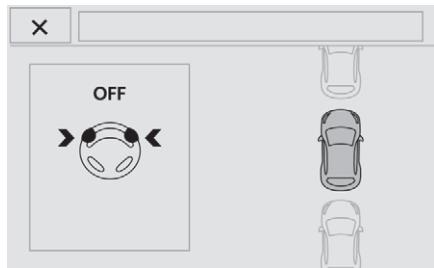
The driver takes back control of the vehicle's steering.

## Deactivation

The system is deactivated automatically:

- on switching off the ignition,
- if the engine stalls,
- if no manoeuvre is performed within 5 minutes of selecting the type of manoeuvre,
- after a prolonged stop of the vehicle during a manoeuvre,
- if the wheel anti-slip regulation (ASR) is triggered,
- if the speed of the vehicle exceeds the stated limit,
- when the driver interrupts movement of the steering wheel,
- if the driver presses the Park Assist control,
- if the vehicle cannot be properly positioned (too many manoeuvres to get the vehicle in or out),
- if the driver's door is opened,
- if one of the front wheels encounters an obstacle.

A message is displayed in the screen.



The driver then takes back control of the vehicle's steering.

**!** If the system is deactivated during a manoeuvre, the driver should reactivate it manually to repeat the measurement.

## Switching off

The system is switched off automatically:

- when towing a trailer,
- if the driver's door is opened,
- if the speed of the vehicle is above 43 mph (70 km/h).

To switch the system off for a prolonged period, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Malfunctions

**!** In the event of a system fault, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel and/or a message appears in the screen, accompanied by an audible signal (short beep). The indicator lamp in the control flashes for a few seconds. If the problem occurs while using the system, the indicator lamp goes off.

**STOP** In the event of a fault with the power steering, these warning lamps come on in the instrument panel.



Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** If the lateral distance between your vehicle and the space is too great, the system may not be able to measure the space. Any object exceeding the dimensions of the vehicle (e.g. long or wide load) is not taken into account by the Park Assist system during a manoeuvre.

**i** In bad and wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered by road dirt, ice or snow.

In the event of a fault, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



## PEUGEOT & TOTAL A PARTNERSHIP FOR PERFORMANCE!

The PEUGEOTTOTAL team knows how to push back the limits of performance to win victories in the most difficult conditions, as confirmed by the first three places achieved in 2017. To obtain these exceptional results, the PEUGEOT Sport teams chose TOTAL QUARTZ for the PEUGEOT 3008 DKR, a high-tech lubricant that protects the engine in the most severe conditions.

**TOTAL QUARTZ protects your engine against the effects of time.**

TOTAL QUARTZ Ineo First is a high performance lubricant, the result of work done together by PEUGEOT and TOTAL R&D. Specially formulated for the engines in PEUGEOT vehicles, its innovative technology significantly reduces CO<sub>2</sub> emissions and keeps your engine clean.

PEUGEOT RECOMMENDS TOTAL



## Compatibility of fuels

### Fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and which can be obtained from filling stations:



Petrol that meets standard EN228, mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN15376.



**i** The only petrol additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 standard.

### Fuel used for Diesel engines

The Diesel engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and which can be obtained from filling stations:



Diesel fuel that meets standard EN590 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).



**B10** Diesel fuel that meets standard EN16734 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 10% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

**XTL** Paraffinic Diesel fuel that meets standard EN15940 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

**B20** B20 or B30 fuel meeting standard EN16709 can be used in your Diesel engine. However, this use, even

**B30** occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".

For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel, etc.) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

**i** The only Diesel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715000 standard.

### Diesel at low temperature

At temperatures below 0°C (+32°F), the formation of paraffins in summer-type Diesel fuels could result in an abnormal operation of the fuel supply circuit. To avoid this, we recommend using winter-type Diesel fuel and keeping the fuel tank more than 50% full. If, despite this, at temperatures below -15°C (+5°F) the engine has problems starting, just leave the vehicle in a garage or heated workshop for a little while.

### Travelling abroad

Certain fuels could damage the engine of your vehicle.

In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific trade name, etc.) to ensure correct operation of the engine.

For any additional information, contact a dealer.

## Fuel tank

Capacity of the tank:

- approximately **50 litres** (petrol engines).
- approximately **50 litres** (Diesel engines).
- approximately **45 litres** (BlueHDi Diesel engines).

**!** With Stop & Start, never refuel with the system in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key.

## Refilling

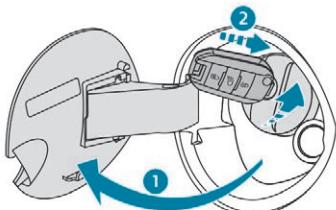
A self-adhesive label on the inner face of the filler flap reminds you of the type of fuel to use, depending on your engine.

Additions of fuel must be of at least 5 litres, in order to be registered by the fuel gauge.

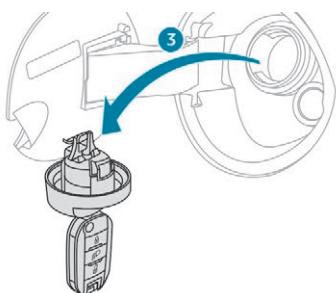
**i** The key cannot be removed from the lock until the cap is refitted. Opening the filler cap may result in an inrush of air. This is entirely normal and results from the sealing of the fuel system.

To refuel in complete safety:

- ☞ You must switch off the engine.



- ☞ Open the fuel filler flap by pulling with a finger at the cut-out 1.
- ☞ Insert the key in the cap, then turn it to the left 2.



- ☞ Remove the cap and hook it onto the clip located on the inside of the flap 3.
- ☞ Fill up the tank completely, but do not continue after the 3rd cut-off of the nozzle; this could cause malfunctions.

Once you have finished refuelling:

- ☞ Refit the filler cap.
- ☞ Turn the key to the right, then remove it from the cap.
- ☞ Close the fuel filler flap.

**!** If you have added the wrong fuel, you must have the tank drained and refilled with the correct fuel before you start the engine.

## Low fuel level

 When the low fuel level is reached in the fuel tank, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel. **Approximately 5 litres** of fuel remain in the tank. When the warning lamp flashes, **very little fuel** remains in the tank.

Refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out.

For more information on **Running out of fuel (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Fuel cut-off

Your vehicle is equipped with a safety device which cuts off the fuel supply in the event of a collision.

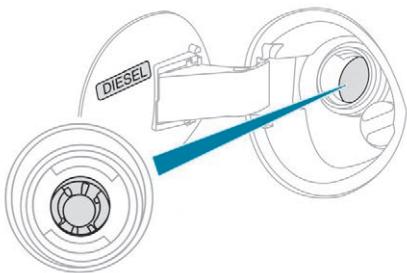
## Misfuel prevention (Diesel)

(Depending on the country where the product is sold.)

Mechanical device which prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol. It avoids the risk of engine damage that can result from filling with the wrong fuel.

Located in the filler neck, the misfuel prevention device appears when the filler cap is removed.

## Operation



When a petrol filler nozzle is introduced into the Diesel tank, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling. **Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.**

**i** It remains possible to use a fuel can to fill the tank.

In order to ensure a good flow of fuel, do not place the nozzle of the fuel can in direct contact with the flap of the misfuel prevention device and pour slowly.

### Travelling abroad

As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible.

Not all Diesel vehicles are fitted with misfuel protection, so before travelling abroad, we recommend that you check with the PEUGEOT dealer network, whether your vehicle is suitable for the fuel pumps in the country in which you intend to travel.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. The maximum towed load must be reduced by 10% for every 1,000 metres of altitude.

**i** Use towing devices and their genuine harnesses approved by PEUGEOT. It is recommended that the installation be performed by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

If the towing device is not fitted by a PEUGEOT dealer, it must still be fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.

Certain driving assistance or manoeuvring assistance functions are automatically disabled if an approved towing device is used.

**!** Observe the maximum authorised towable weight, indicated on your vehicle's registration certificate, the manufacturer's label as well as in the **Technical data** section of this guide.

**Complying with the maximum authorised nose weight (towball) also includes the use of accessories (bicycle carriers, tow boxes, etc.).**

**!** Observe the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.

## Towing device

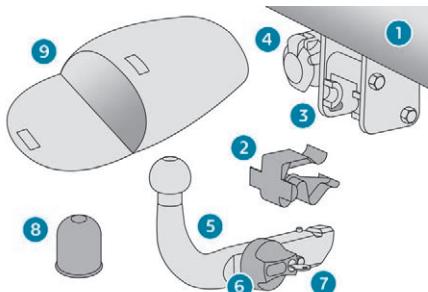
### Load distribution

**☞** Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

# Towing device with quickly detachable towball

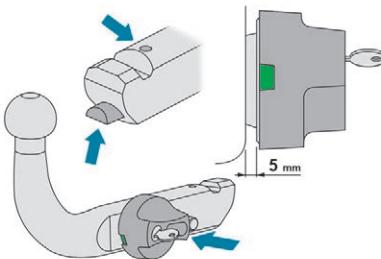
## Presentation

This genuine towing device allows the towball to be fitted and removed quickly and easily without using tools. Installed behind the bumper, the device is concealed when the towball is removed and the socket carrier is folded away.



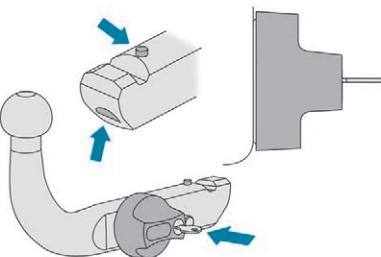
1. Carrier.
2. Protective plug.
3. Safety eye.
4. Folding trailer socket.
5. Detachable towball.
6. Locking/unlocking wheel.
7. Key-operated safety lock.
8. Ball protective cover.
9. Stowing bag.

## A. Locked position



The locking wheel is not in contact with the towball (gap of about 5 mm).  
 The green mark is visible.  
 The lock for the locking wheel is facing rearward.  
 The bolt is visible and extends beyond the towball.

## B. Unlocked position



The locking wheel is in contact with the towball.  
 The green mark is hidden.

The lock for the locking wheel is facing forward. The bolt is not visible.

**!** Observe the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.

**i** To find out about the **Technical characteristics**, and in particular the weights and towable loads for your vehicle, refer to the corresponding section. To ensure complete safety while driving with a **Towing device**, refer to the corresponding section.

## i Before each use

Check that the towball is correctly fitted, verifying that:

- the towball is correctly locked (position A),
- the safety lock is closed and the key removed; the locking wheel can no longer be operated,
- the towball must not be able to move in its carrier; test by shaking it with your hand.

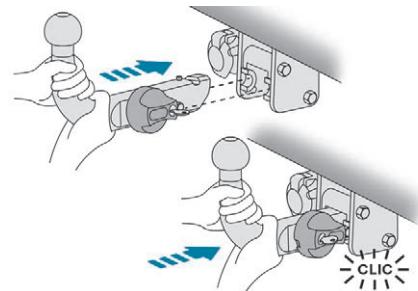
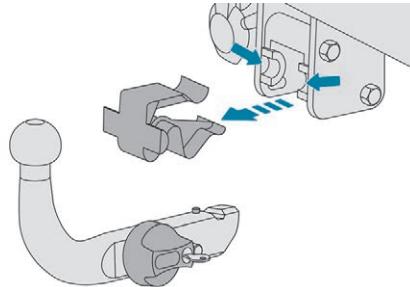
### **i During use**

Never release the locking system with a trailer or load carrier on the towball.  
Never exceed the gross train weight (GTW) for the vehicle.  
Before setting off, check the headlamp beam height adjustment.  
For more information on **Headlamp beam height adjustment**, refer to the corresponding section.

### **i Following use**

For journeys made without a trailer or load carrier, the trailer socket must be folded away, the towball removed and the plug inserted in the carrier. This measure applies particularly if the towball could hinder visibility of the number plate or lighting.

## **Fitting the towball**



Take the towball in both hands; insert the end of the towball into the carrier, then, to ensure that it has correctly locked in place, press down firmly on the ball end of the towball.

The locking wheel then automatically rotates anti-clockwise with an audible "click". Take care to keep your hands clear.

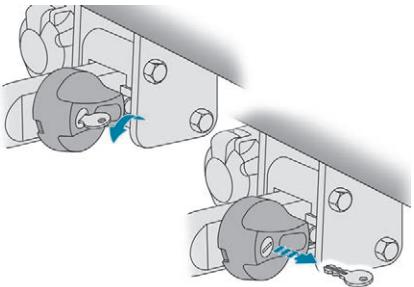
Remove the protective plug from the carrier and check the condition of the fixing system. If necessary, clean the carrier with a brush or a clean cloth.

Take the towball from the stowing bag.

Remove the protective cover from the ball.

Stow the plug and cover in the stowing bag.

Check that the towball is unlocked (position **B**). If not, insert the key in the lock and turn the key clockwise to unlock the mechanism. Then press the locking wheel and turn it clockwise as far as possible.



Check that the towball has correctly locked in place (position A).

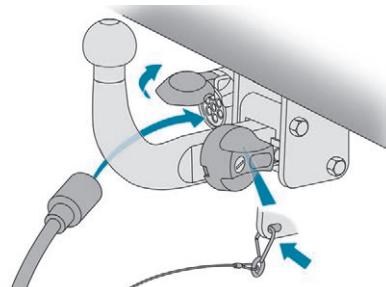
Turn the key anti-clockwise to lock the towball fixing mechanism.

Always remove the key and keep it in a safe place.

If the key cannot be turned or removed, this means that the towball is not fitted correctly; start the procedure again.

If any locking step fails, start the procedure again.

In all cases, if the marking remains red, do not use the towing device and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



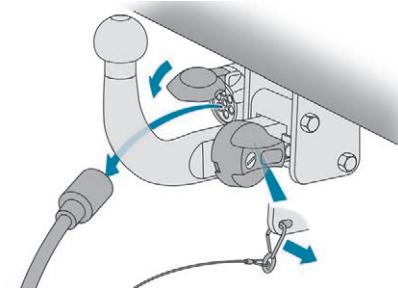
Attach the trailer to the towball.

Attach the trailer cable to the safety eye fitted on the towball carrier.

Lower the trailer socket carrier by pulling down on the eye visible below the bumper.

Lift off the protective cover on the socket and connect the trailer plug.

## Removing the towball

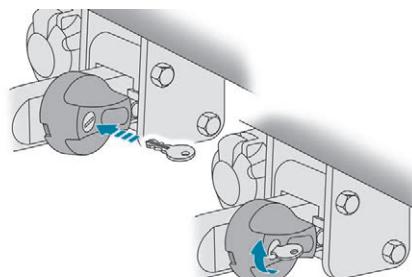


Disconnect the trailer plug from the socket on the carrier.

Detach the trailer cable from the safety eye on the carrier.

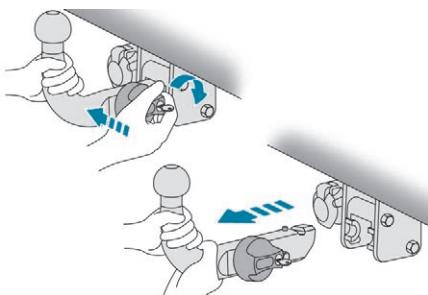
Detach the trailer from the towball.

Fold the socket carrier away.



Insert the key into the lock.

Turn the key clockwise to unlock the towball fixing mechanism.

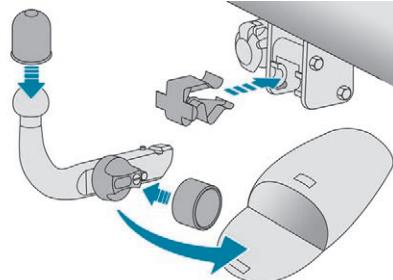


Grasp the towball firmly with one hand; with the other hand, press and turn the locking wheel clockwise as far as it will go.

Remove the towball from the carrier.

Remove the key to avoid it being damaged when stowing the towball.

**!** Be ready for the weight of the towball (around 3.5 kg). Risk of injury!



Refit the protective cover for the ball.  
Stow the towball in its bag.  
Refit the protective plug to the carrier.

## Maintenance

Correct operation is only possible if the towball and its carrier are kept clean.

Before cleaning the vehicle with a high pressure jet wash, the trailer socket must be folded away, the towball removed and the plug inserted in the carrier.

**i** Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for any work on the towing device system.

## Storage

It is recommended that the removable towball be safely stowed, preferably in a storage space below the boot floor.

Secure the towball using the bag tie cord.

**!** Never leave the removable towball unsecured in the boot. In the event of sudden braking, a towball left loose in the boot could present a danger to passengers in the vehicle. Furthermore, the towball and the boot risk being damaged.

## Snow chains



In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

**!** Snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

**!** Take account of the legislation in force in your country on the use of snow chains and the maximum authorised speed.

Only use the chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheels fitted to your vehicle:

Original tyre size	Maximum link size
195/65 R15	9 mm
195/60 R16	
205/55 R16	
205/50 R17	

For more information on snow chains, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Installation tips

- ☛ If you have to fit the chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface on the side of the road.
- ☛ Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks under the wheels to prevent movement of your vehicle.
- ☛ Fit the chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- ☛ Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 31 mph (50 km/h).
- ☛ Stop your vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

**i** It is strongly recommended that before you leave, you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface.

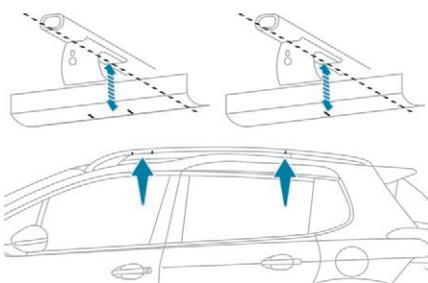
**!** Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow to avoid damaging your vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

**!** Use accessories recommended by PEUGEOT, observing the manufacturer's recommendations and fitting instructions so as to avoid the risk of damaging the bodywork (deformation, scratches, etc.). Before placing a load on the roof, transverse roof bars must be fitted first. The longitudinal roof bars cannot be removed.

**i** Maximum authorised weight on the roof bars, for a loading height not exceeding 40 cm (with the exception of bicycle carriers): refer to the instructions provided with the roof bars.

If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the mountings on the roof.

Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects that are longer than the vehicle.



### ! Recommendations

Distribute the load uniformly, taking care to avoid overloading one of the sides. Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof. Secure the load securely. Drive gently: the vehicle will be more susceptible to the effects of side winds and the stability of the vehicle may be affected. On a long journey, check the security of the load at every stop. Remove the roof bars once they are no longer needed.

## Energy economy mode

System which manages the duration of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.

After switching off the engine and for a maximum cumulative period of around 30 minutes, you can continue to use functions such as the audio and telematics system, the wipers, dipped beam, courtesy lamps, etc.

## Switching to economy mode

Once this period has elapsed, a message appears in the screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.

If a telephone call is in progress at this time, the connection via the audio system's hands-free function will be maintained for around 10 minutes.

## Exiting the mode

These functions will be automatically restored the next time the vehicle is used.

- ☞ To restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and allow it run for at least 5 minutes.

**!** The engine will not start if the battery is discharged.

For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Load reduction mode

System which manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.

When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as air conditioning, heated rear screen, etc.

The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

## Advice on care and maintenance

Recommendations on the care and maintenance of your vehicle are given in the Warranty and Maintenance Record.

## Bonnet



Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid the risk of injury related to an automatic change to START mode.

**!** The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.

**!** Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, etc.) be limited.

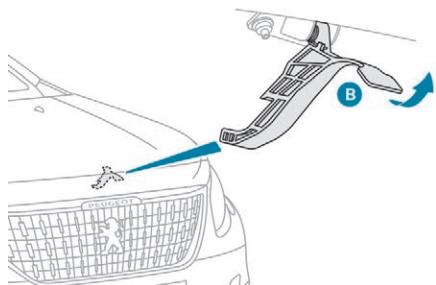
## Opening

- Open the left-hand front door.



- Pull the release lever **A**, located at the bottom of the door aperture, towards you.

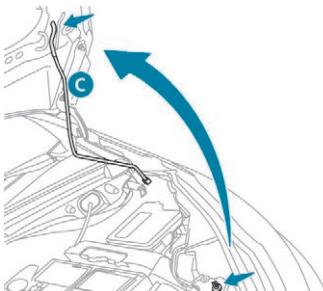
**i** The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents opening of the bonnet when the left-hand front door is closed.



- Lift the exterior safety catch **B** and raise the bonnet.

! Do not open the bonnet under very windy conditions.

When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the stay with care (risk of burns).

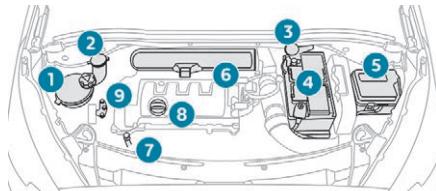


- Unclip the stay **C** from its housing and place it in the support slot to hold the bonnet open.

## Locking

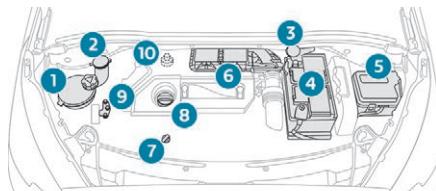
- Take the stay **C** out of its support slot.
- Clip the stay in its housing.
- Lower the bonnet and release it near the end of its travel.
- Pull on the bonnet to check that it is fully latched.

## Petrol engines



1. Engine coolant reservoir.
2. Screenwash fluid reservoir.
3. Brake fluid reservoir.
4. Battery/Fuses.
5. Fusebox.
6. Air filter.
7. Engine oil dipstick.
8. Engine oil filler cap.
9. Remote earth point (" - " terminal).

## Diesel engines



1. Engine coolant reservoir.
2. Screenwash fluid reservoir.
3. Brake fluid reservoir.
4. Battery/Fuses.
5. Fusebox.
6. Air filter.
7. Engine oil dipstick.
8. Engine oil filler cap.
9. Remote earth point (" - " terminal).
10. Radiator.

4. Battery/Fuses.
5. Fusebox.
6. Air filter.
7. Engine oil dipstick.
8. Engine oil filler cap.
9. Remote earth point (" terminal).
10. Priming pump (depending on engine).

## Checking levels

Check all of these levels regularly, in line with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if necessary, unless otherwise indicated. If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** The fluid must comply with the manufacturer's recommendations and with the vehicle's engine.

**!** Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

## Used products

**!** Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with skin. Most of these fluids are harmful to health or indeed very corrosive.

 Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.

Take used oil to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop and dispose of it in the containers reserved for this purpose.

## Engine oil level



The check is carried out either when the ignition is switched on using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel for vehicles equipped with an electric gauge, or using the dipstick.

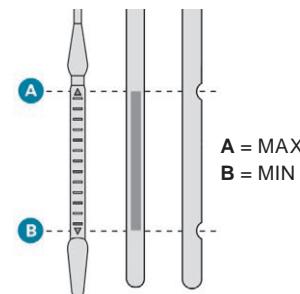
**i** To ensure that the reading is correct, your vehicle must be parked on a level surface with the engine stopped for more than 30 minutes.

It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). PEUGEOT recommends that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3,000 miles (5,000 km).

## Checking using the dipstick

The location of the dipstick is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

- Take the dipstick by its coloured grip and pull it out completely.
- Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean non-fluffy cloth.
- Refit the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to make the visual check: the correct level is between marks **A** and **B**.



If you find that the level is above the **A** mark or below the **B** mark, **do not start the engine**.

- If the level is above the **MAX** mark (risk of damage to the engine), contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
- If the level is below the **MIN** mark, you must top up the engine oil.

## Oil grade

Before topping up the oil or changing the oil, check that the oil is the correct grade for your engine and conforms to the manufacturer's recommendations.

## Topping up the engine oil level

The location of the oil filler cap is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

- ☛ Unscrew the oil filler cap to access the filler opening.
- ☛ Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
- ☛ Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
- ☛ Add more oil if necessary.
- ☛ After checking the level, carefully refit the oil filler cap and the dipstick in its tube.

 After topping up the oil, the check when switching on the ignition with the oil level indicator in the instrument panel is not valid during the 30 minutes after topping up.

## Engine oil change

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation. In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emissions control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

## Brake fluid level

 The brake fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. If it is not, check the brake pad wear.

## Brake fluid change

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation.

## Coolant level



Check the coolant level regularly. It is normal to top up the fluid between two services.

The check and top-up must only be done with the engine cold.

A low coolant level presents a risk of serious damage to your engine.

The coolant level should be close to the "MAX" mark but should never exceed it.

If the level is close to or below the "MIN" mark, it is essential to top up.

When the engine is hot, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan.

In addition, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.

To avoid the risk of scalding when you need to top up in an emergency, place a cloth around the cap and unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.

Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up to the required level.

**!** The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.

7

## Screenwash fluid level



Top up to the required level when necessary.

## Fluid specification

The screenwash fluid must be topped up with a ready for use mix.

In winter (temperatures below zero), a fluid with antifreeze must be used that is appropriate for the prevailing conditions, in order to preserve the elements of the system (pump, tank, ducts, etc.).

Filling with pure water is prohibited under all circumstances (risk of freezing, limestone deposits, etc.).

## Diesel fuel additive level (Diesel with particle filter)



The additive reservoir low level is indicated by fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message that the particle filter additive level is too low.

## Topping up

The reservoir must be topped up without delay by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Level of AdBlue

An alert is triggered once the reserve level is reached.

To avoid the vehicle being immobilised as per regulations, you must top up the AdBlue tank.

For more information on **AdBlue (BlueHDI engines)**, and in particular on topping up the tank, refer to the corresponding section.

## Checks

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and depending on your engine. Otherwise, have them checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## 12 V battery



The battery does not require any maintenance. However, check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

**i** For more information on the precautions to take before starting work on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

**!** Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery of specific technology and specification. Its replacement should be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Air filter



Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace it twice as often, if necessary.**

## Passenger compartment filter



Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace it twice as often, if necessary.**

**i** A clogged passenger compartment filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

## Oil filter



Change the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

## Particle filter (Diesel)

**!** The start of saturation of the particle filter is indicated by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an alert message.

**i** As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 37 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off. If the warning lamp stays on, this indicates a low Diesel additive level. For more information on **Checking the levels** and in particular on the Diesel additive level, refer to the corresponding section. On a new vehicle, the first particle filter regeneration operations may be accompanied by a "burning" smell, which is perfectly normal. Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice the emission of water vapour at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

## Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

## Electronic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

## Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

## Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

## Brake disc/drum wear



For information on checking brake disc/drum wear, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Parking brake



If excessive travel of the parking brake or a loss of effectiveness of this system is noticed, the parking brake must be checked, even between two services.

This system must be checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Wheels and tyres



The pressure must be checked on all tyres, including the spare wheel, when the tyres are "cold", at least once a month and before a long journey.

The pressures given on the tyre pressure label are valid for "cold" tyres. If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 6 miles (10 kilometres) at more than 31 mph (50 km/h), 0.3 bar (30 kPa) should be added to the values given on the label.

Under-inflation increases fuel consumption.

Non-compliant tyre pressure causes premature wear on tyres and has an adverse effect on the vehicle's road holding – Risk of an accident!

Driving with worn or damaged tyres reduces braking efficiency and control of the vehicle's steering. Regular inspections of the condition of tyres (tread and sides) and rims are recommended as well as making sure that valves are fitted.

Using different size wheels and tyres from those specified can affect the lifetime of tyres, wheel rotation, ground clearance and the speedometer reading and have an adverse effect on road holding.

Fitting different tyres on the front and rear axles can cause the ESC to mistime.



Only use products recommended by PEUGEOT or products of equivalent quality and specification.

In order to optimise the operation of components as important as those in the braking system, PEUGEOT selects and offers very specific products.

After washing the vehicle, dampness, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Make light brake applications to dry and defrost the brakes.

## AdBlue® (BlueHDI engines)

To respect the environment and ensure compliance with the Euro 6 standard, without adversely affecting the performance or fuel consumption of its Diesel engines, PEUGEOT has taken the decision to equip its vehicles with a system that associates SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) with a Diesel particle filter (DPF) for the treatment of exhaust gases.

### SCR system

Using a fluid called AdBlue® that contains urea, a catalytic converter turns up to 85% of nitrogen oxides (NOx) into nitrogen and water, which are harmless to health and the environment.



The AdBlue® is contained in a **special tank** holding about 17 litres (1.6 BlueHDI engines) or 15 litres (1.5 BlueHDI engines).

An alert system is triggered automatically once the reserve level is reached: you can then drive for a further 1,500 miles (2,400 km) before the tank is empty.



Once the AdBlue® tank is empty, a system required by regulations prevents starting of the engine.

If the SCR system is defective, the level of emissions from your vehicle will no longer meet the Euro 6 standard: your vehicle becomes polluting.

In the event of a confirmed fault with the SCR system, you must go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible: after a running distance of 685 miles (1,100 km), a system will be triggered automatically to prevent engine starting.

In either case, a range indicator gives you the distance you can travel before the vehicle is immobilised.



For more information on the **Warning and indicator lamps** and associated alerts, refer to the corresponding section.



#### Freezing of the AdBlue®

AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below around -11°C.

The SCR system includes a heater for the AdBlue® tank, allowing you to continue driving in very cold conditions.

## Supply of AdBlue®

**i** It is recommended that the AdBlue® is topped up as soon as the first alert is issued indicating that the reserve level has been reached.

**!** In order to ensure that the SCR system operates correctly:

- Use only AdBlue® fluid that meets the ISO 22241 standard.
- Never transfer AdBlue® to another container: it would lose its purity.
- Never dilute AdBlue® with water.

You can obtain AdBlue® from a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

**i** You can also visit a service station equipped with AdBlue® pumps specially designed for passenger vehicles (for those versions with access to the AdBlue® tank via the fuel filler flap).

**!** Never top up from an AdBlue® dispenser reserved for heavy goods vehicles.

## Precautions for use

AdBlue® is a urea-based solution. This liquid is non-flammable, colourless and odourless (when kept in a cool place).

In the event of contact with the skin, wash the affected area with soap and water. In the event of contact with the eyes, wash (irrigate) the eyes with large amounts of water or with an eye wash solution for at least 15 minutes. If you feel a persistent burning sensation or irritation, get medical attention.

If swallowed, immediately wash out the mouth with clean water and then drink plenty of water.

In certain conditions (at high temperature, for example), the risk of release of ammonia cannot be excluded: do not inhale the vapour. Ammonia has an irritant effect on mucous membranes (eyes, nose and throat).

**!** Keep AdBlue® out of the reach of children, in its original container or bottle.

## Recommendations on storage

AdBlue® freezes at about -11°C and deteriorates above 25°C. It should be stored in a cool place and protected from direct sunlight.

Under these conditions, the fluid can be kept for at least a year.

If the additive has frozen, it can be used once it has completely thawed out.

**!** Never keep containers or bottles of AdBlue® in your vehicle.

## Procedure

Before starting the top-up procedure, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a flat and level surface.

In winter, check that the temperature of the vehicle is above -11°C. If not, due to freezing, the AdBlue® cannot be poured into the tank. Park your vehicle somewhere warmer for a few hours before topping up.

**!** In the event of an AdBlue® breakdown, confirmed by the message "Add AdBlue: Starting impossible", you must top up with at least 5 litres.

**!** Never pour AdBlue® into the Diesel fuel tank.

**i** For the specifics associated with the access configuration for the AdBlue® tank (via the boot or via the fuel filler flap), refer to the descriptions given in detail further on.

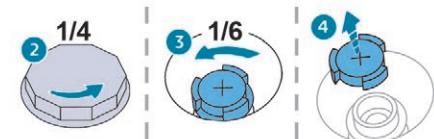
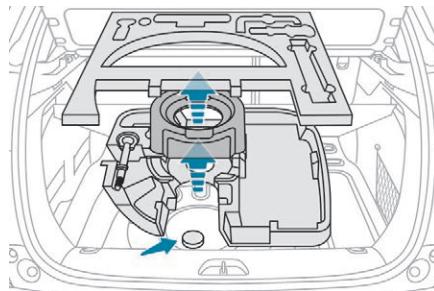
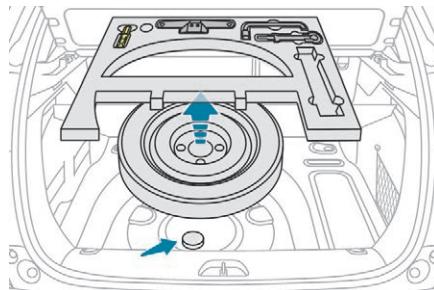
**!** If any AdBlue® is splashed, or if there are any spillages on the side of the body, rinse immediately with cold water or wipe with a damp cloth. If the fluid has crystallised, clean it off using a sponge and hot water.

**!** Important: **when topping up after a breakdown due to running out of AdBlue**, you must wait for at least 5 minutes before switching on the ignition, **without opening the driver's door, unlocking the vehicle or inserting the key in the switch**.

Switch on the ignition, then after a minimum of 10 seconds, start the engine.

☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the switch to switch off the engine.

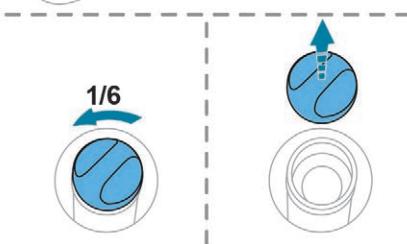
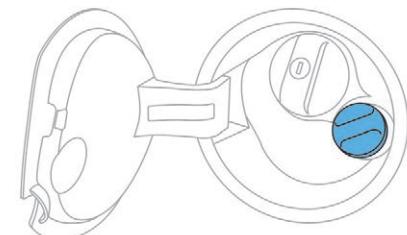
## Access through the boot (1.6 BlueHDi Euro 6.1)



☞ Raise the boot carpet then, depending on equipment, lift out the spare wheel and/or the storage box.

- ☞ Without pressing, turn the black cap a quarter turn anti-clockwise and lift it off.
- ☞ Turn the blue cap 1/6 of a turn anti-clockwise.
- ☞ Lift off the cap.

## Access through the fuel filler flap (1.5 BlueHDi Euro 6.2)



- ☞ With the vehicle unlocked and the fuel filler flap open, turn the blue cap of the AdBlue® tank 1/6 of a turn anti-clockwise.
- ☞ Remove the blue cap.

## Refilling

- ☞ Obtain an AdBlue® container or bottle. After first checking the use-by date, read the instructions on the label carefully before pouring the contents of the container or bottle into your vehicle's AdBlue tank.

Or

- ☞ Insert the AdBlue® pump nozzle and refill the tank until the nozzle stops automatically.

### ! Important:

- To avoid overflowing the AdBlue® tank, it is recommended:
  - To top up between 10 and 13 litres using AdBlue® containers.
- Or
  - That you stop after the nozzle's first automatic cut-out if you are refilling at a service station.
- If your vehicle's AdBlue® tank is completely empty – which is confirmed by the alert message and the impossibility of starting the engine – you must add at least 5 litres.

## After refilling

### Through the boot (1.6 BlueHDI Euro 6.1)

- ☞ Refit the blue cap to the tank filler and turn it 1/6 of a turn clockwise, to its stop.
- ☞ Refit the black cap and turn it a quarter of a turn clockwise, without pressing. Ensure that the indicator on the cap lines up with the indicator on the support.
- ☞ Depending on equipment, return the spare wheel and/or the storage box to the bottom of the boot.
- ☞ Refit the boot carpet and close the tailgate.

### Through the fuel filler flap (1.5 litre BlueHDI Euro 6.2)

- ☞ Refit the blue cap to the tank filler and turn it 1/6 of a turn clockwise, to its stop.
- ☞ Close the fuel filler flap.



Do not dispose of AdBlue® bottles or containers in the household waste.  
Place them in a suitable container or take them to your dealer.

## Running out of fuel (Diesel)

On vehicles fitted with HDi engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel. For versions with a manual priming pump, refer to the diagram of the underbonnet view. If the tank on your vehicle is fitted with **Misfuel prevention**, refer to the corresponding section.

**i** If the engine does not start the first time, do not keep trying, but start the procedure again from the beginning.

## 1.5 BlueHDI (Euro 6.2) engine

- ☛ Fill the fuel tank with at least 5 litres of Diesel.
- ☛ Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
- ☛ Wait around 1 minute and switch off the ignition.
- ☛ Operate the starter to run the engine. If the engine does not start, repeat the procedure.

## 1.6 BlueHDI (Euro 6.1) engine

- ☛ Fill the fuel tank with at least 5 litres of Diesel.
- ☛ Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
- ☛ Wait around 6 seconds and switch off the ignition.
- ☛ Repeat the operation 10 times.
- ☛ Operate the starter to run the engine.

## 1.6 e-HDI engine

- ☛ Fill the fuel tank with at least 5 litres of Diesel.
- ☛ Open the bonnet.
- ☛ If necessary, unclip the cover to access the priming pump.
- ☛ Operate the priming pump repeatedly until resistance is felt (there may be resistance at the first press).
- ☛ Operate the starter to start the engine (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- ☛ If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again then start the engine.
- ☛ Put the cover back in place and clip it in.
- ☛ Close the bonnet again.

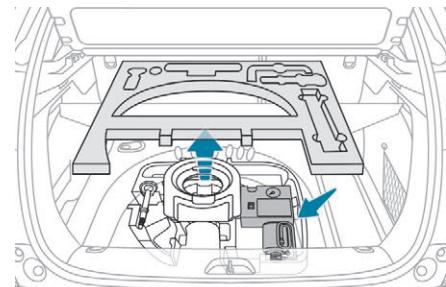
## Temporary puncture repair kit

**i** Scan the QR code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

Comprising a compressor and a sealant cartridge, it allows the **temporary repair** of a tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.

It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread or shoulder.

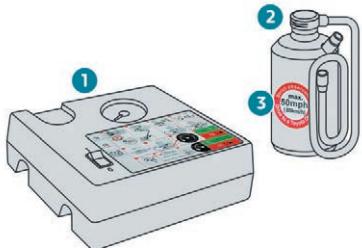
## Access to the kit



This kit is installed in the storage box, under the boot floor.

**i** The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of the compressor for long enough to repair the damaged tyre.

## Composition of the kit

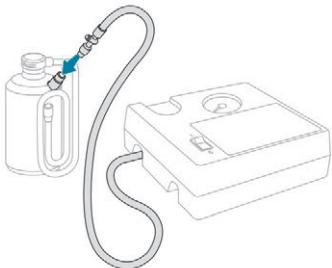


1. 12 V compressor, with integral pressure gauge.
2. Sealant cartridge bottle, with integral hose.
3. Speed limit sticker.

## Repair procedure

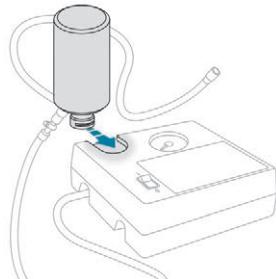
- ☞ Park the vehicle without obstructing any traffic and apply the parking brake.
- ☞ Follow the safety instructions (hazard warning lamps, warning triangle, wearing high visibility vest, etc.) according to the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.
- ☞ Switch off the ignition.

- ☞ Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.



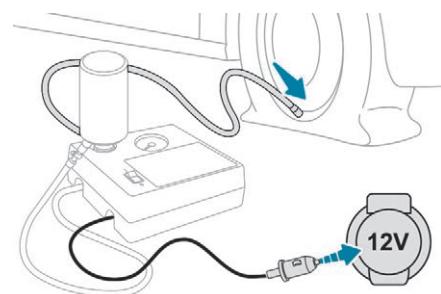
- ☞ Connect the pipe from the compressor to the bottle of sealant.

**!** Avoid removing any foreign bodies (e.g. nail, screw, etc.) which have penetrated into the tyre.



- ☞ Turn the sealant bottle over and secure it in the notch provided on the compressor.

- ☞ Remove the valve cap from the tyre to be repaired, and place it in a clean area.



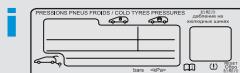
- ☞ Connect the hose from the bottle of sealant to the valve of the tyre to be repaired and tighten firmly.

- ☞ Check that the compressor switch is in the "O" position.
- ☞ Fully uncoil the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.
- ☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.



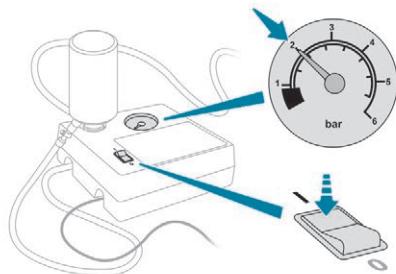
- ☞ Affix the speed limit sticker.

! The speed limit sticker must be secured to the interior of the vehicle in the area close to the driver, to remind the driver that a wheel is in temporary use.



The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.

☛ Switch on the ignition.



☛ Start the compressor by turning the switch to position "I" until the pressure of the tyre reaches 2 bars. The sealant product is injected under pressure into the tyre; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of blowback).

! If a pressure of 2 bars is not reached after about 7 minutes, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

- ☛ Place the switch in the "O" position.
- ☛ Disconnect the compressor's electric plug from the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☛ Replace the cap on the valve.
- ☛ Remove the kit.
- ☛ Remove and then store the bottle of sealant.

! Take care, the sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.

Keep this product out of the reach of children.

The use-by date of the fluid is marked on the bottle.

After use, do not discard the bottle in standard waste, take it to a PEUGEOT dealer or an authorised waste disposal site.

Do not forget to obtain a new bottle of sealant, available from a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



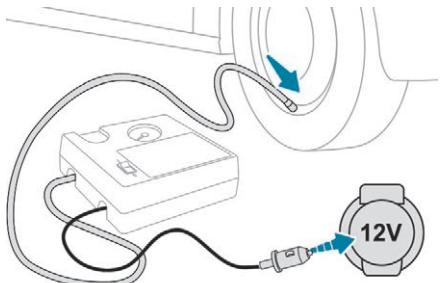
- ☛ Drive immediately for approximately three miles (five kilometres), at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), to plug the puncture.
- ☛ Stop to check the repair and **measure the tyre pressure** using the kit.

! Do not exceed the speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tyre repaired using this type of kit.

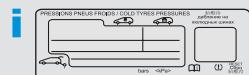
## Checking/adjusting tyre pressures

! You can also use the compressor, without injecting sealant, to check and, if necessary, adjust the tyre pressures.

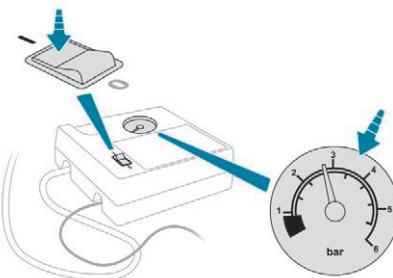
- ☛ Remove the valve cap from the tyre and keep it in a clean place.
- ☛ Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.



- ☛ Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.
- ☛ Check that the compressor switch is in the "O" position.
- ☛ Fully uncoil the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.
- ☛ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☛ Switch on the ignition.



The tire inflation pressures are given on this label.



- ☛ Start the compressor by placing the switch in the "I" position and adjust the pressure to the value shown on the vehicle's tyre pressure label. To deflate: press the black button located on the compressor pipe, near the valve connection.

**!** If a pressure of 2 bars is not reached after 7 minutes, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

- ☛ Once the correct pressure is reached, put the switch in the "O" position.
- ☛ Remove the kit then stow it.

**!** Do not drive more than 125 mph (200 km/h) with the repaired tyre; see a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to change the tyre.

#### **i** Tyre under-inflation detection



After a tyre repair, this warning lamp will remain on until the system is reinitialised.

For more information on **Under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

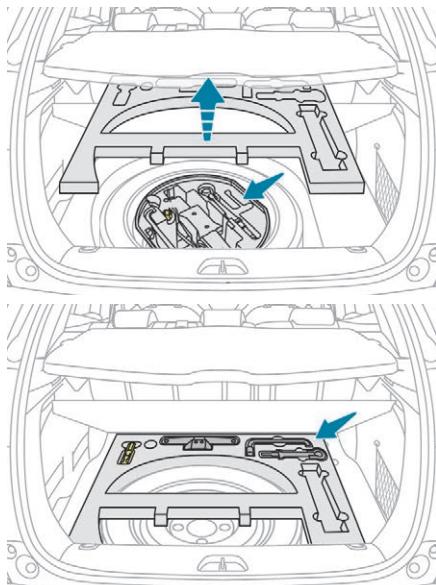
**!** Should the pressure of one or more tyres be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system. For more information on **Under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Spare wheel

**i** Scan the QR code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

Procedure for changing a damaged wheel with the spare wheel using the tools provided with the vehicle.

## Access to the tools



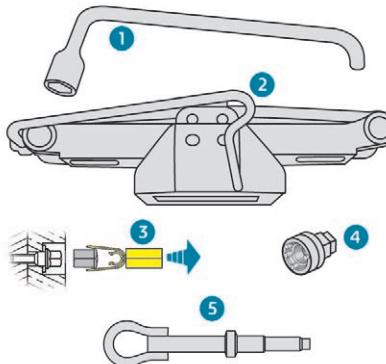
The tools are installed in the boot under the floor.

To gain access:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ lift the floor and remove it,
- ☞ remove the polystyrene spacer,
- ☞ remove the carrier box containing the tools.

## List of tools

(Depending on the country where the product is sold.)



1. **Wheelbrace.**  
For removing the wheel trim and the wheel fastening bolts.
2. **Jack with integrated handle.**  
Used to raise the vehicle.

3. "Bolt cover" tool.  
For removing the bolt protectors (covers) on alloy wheels.
4. Socket for the security bolts (located in the glove box).  
For adapting the wheelbrace to the special "security" bolts.
5. Removable towing eye.

For more information on **Towing the vehicle**, refer to the corresponding section.

**i** **Wheel with wheel trim**  
**When refitting the wheel**, refit the wheel trim starting by placing its notch facing the valve and press around its edge with the palm of your hand.

**!** All of these tools are specific to your vehicle and may vary according to the level of equipment.  
Do not use them for any other purposes.

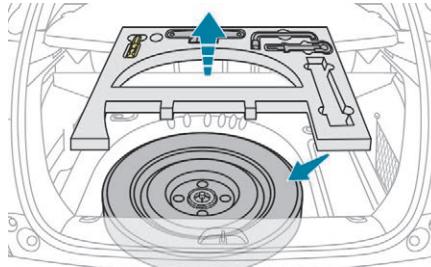
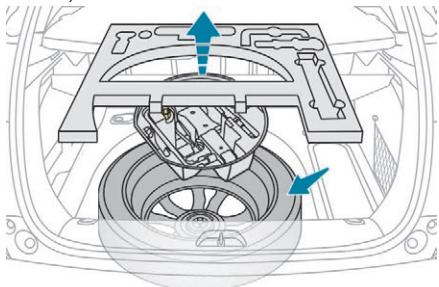
! The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre. Do not use any jack other than the one supplied with this vehicle. If the vehicle does not have its original jack, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the correct jack for it.

The jack meets European standards, as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC.

The jack does not require any maintenance.

## Access to the spare wheel

(Depending on the country where the product is sold.)

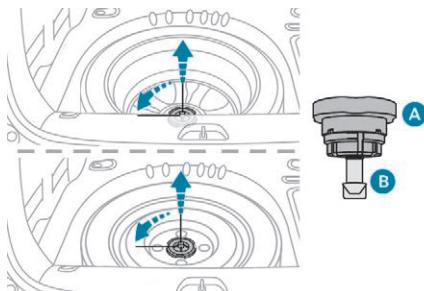


The spare wheel is located in the boot under the floor.

The spare wheel is a steel wheel or a "space-saver" type wheel, depending on the country of sale.

It is secured by a fastening device comprising a nut A and a bolt B.

## Taking out the wheel

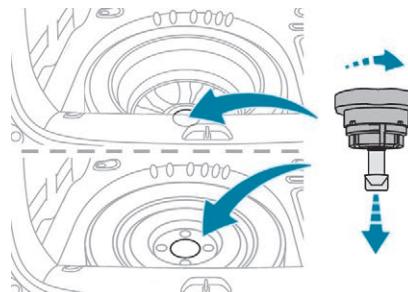


- ☞ Unscrew the (coloured) central nut.
- ☞ Remove the fastening device (nut and bolt).

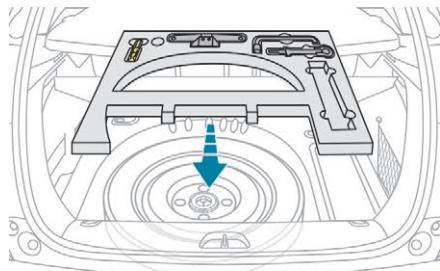
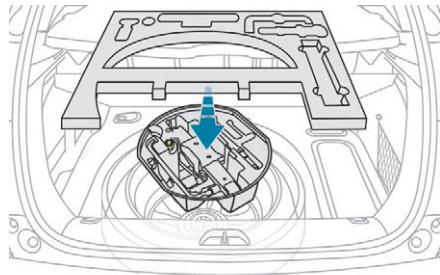
- ☞ Raise the spare wheel towards you from the rear.
- ☞ Take the wheel out of the boot.

## Putting the wheel back in place

- ☞ Put the wheel back in its housing.



- ☞ Give the (coloured) central nut on the bolt a few turns to loosen it.
- ☞ Position the fastening device (nut and bolt) in the middle of the wheel.
- ☞ Tighten fully until the central nut clicks, to retain the wheel correctly.



- ☞ Put the carrier box back in place in the centre of the wheel and clip it.
- ☞ Put the polystyrene storage box back in place.

**i** If there is no wheel in the well, the fastening device (nut and bolt) cannot be refitted.

## Removing a wheel

### **i** Parking the vehicle

Park the vehicle where it does not block traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery.

Apply the parking brake.

Switch the ignition off.

With a manual gearbox, engage first gear to block the wheels.

With an electronic gearbox, place the lever in position **R** to block the wheels.

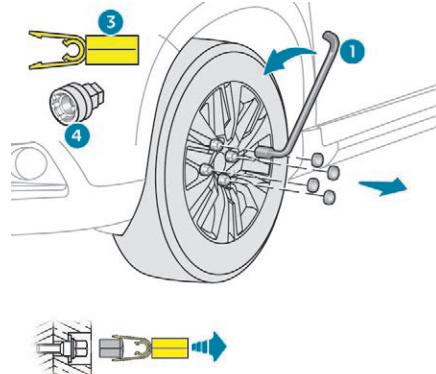
With an automatic gearbox, place the lever in position **P** to block the wheels.

Check for fixed illumination of the parking brake warning lamps in the instrument panel.

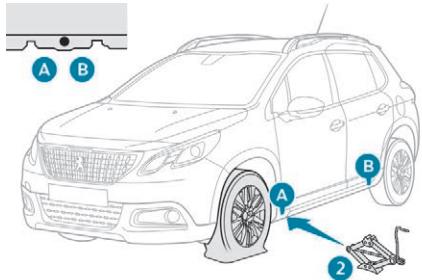
Make absolutely certain that all the occupants have left the vehicle and are waiting in a safe area.

Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.

## List of operations

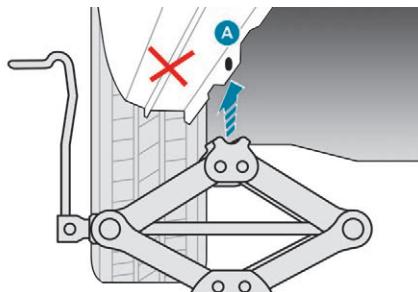
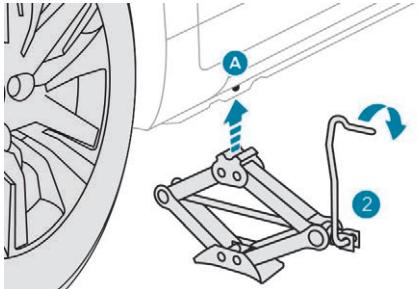


- ☞ To remove the wheel bolt cover on each of the bolts, use tool 3 (depending on equipment).
- ☞ Fit the security socket 4 on the wheelbrace 1 to slacken the security bolt (depending on equipment).
- ☞ Slacken the other bolts using the wheelbrace 1 only.

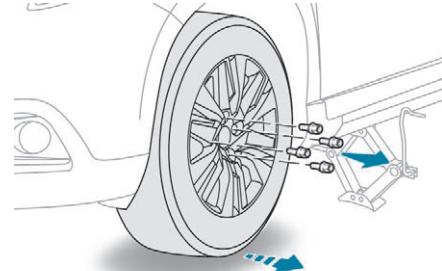


- Place the foot of jack **2** on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the front **A** or rear **B** jacking point provided on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.

**!** Ensure that the jack is stable on a surface that is not loose or slippery and positioned only at jacking points **A** or **B** under the vehicle, making sure that the contact point on the vehicle is centred on the jack head. Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or the jack collapsing or slipping – Risk of injury!



- Extend jack **2** until its head comes into contact with jacking point **A** or **B** used, having contact surface **A** or **B** on the vehicle correctly engaged with the central part of the head of the jack.
- Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to admit the spare (not punctured) wheel easily.



- Remove the bolts and keep them in a clean place.
- Remove the wheel.

## Fitting a wheel





#### **Fitting a steel or "space-saver" spare wheel**

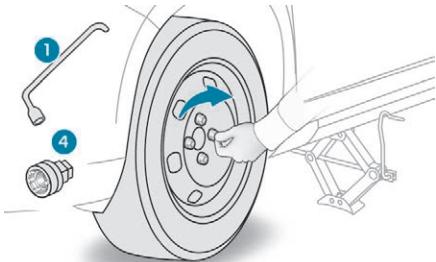
If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, when tightening the bolts on fitting it is normal to notice that the washers do not come into contact with the steel or "space-saver" spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt.

#### **After changing a wheel**

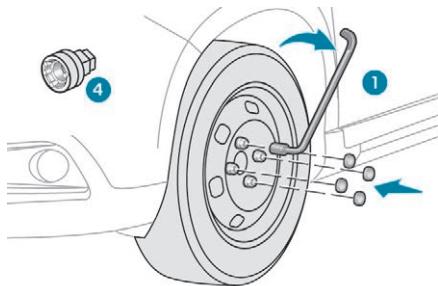
To store the punctured wheel in the boot correctly, first remove the central cover. When using the "space-saver" type spare wheel, do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h). Have the tightening of the bolts and the pressure of the spare wheel checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Have the punctured wheel repaired and replace it on the vehicle as soon as possible.

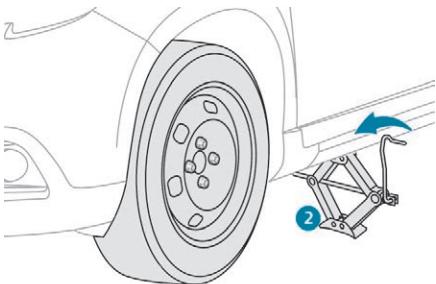
## **List of operations**



- ☞ Put the wheel in place on the hub.
- ☞ Screw in the bolts by hand as far as possible.
- ☞ Pre-tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace 1 fitted with the security socket 4 (depending on equipment).
- ☞ Pre-tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace 1 only.



- ☞ Tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace 1 fitted with the security socket 4 (depending on equipment).
- ☞ Tighten the other bolts using wheelbrace 1 only.
- ☞ Refit the bolt covers on each of the bolts (depending on equipment).
- ☞ Store the tools in the carrier box.



- ☞ Lower the vehicle again fully.
- ☞ Fold the jack 2 and detach it.

## Changing a bulb

**!** The lamps have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating:

- ☛ **do not clean them using a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with a detergent or solvent product,**
- ☛ use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product,
- ☛ when using a high pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

**!** Changing a bulb must only be done with the ignition off and after the lamp has been switched off for several minutes – Risk of serious burns!

- ☛ Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use a lint-free cloth.
- It is essential only to use anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs, so as not to damage the lamp.
- Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb with the same type and specification.

**i** In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

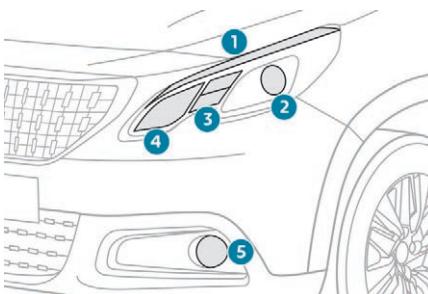
### **!** Light-emitting diodes (LED)

For the replacement of this type of bulb, you must contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

### **i** Halogen bulbs

To ensure good quality lighting, check that the bulb is correctly positioned in its housing.

## Front lamps



### 1. Daytime running lamps/sidelamps (LEDs).

### 2. Dipped beam headlamps (H7).

### 3. Direction indicators (PWY24W).

### 4. Main beam headlamps (H7).

### 5. Foglamps (PSX24W).

(with cornering lighting function, depending on version)

LEDs: light-emitting diodes.

### **!** Opening of bonnet/Access to bulbs

If the engine is warm, proceed with caution – Risk of burns!

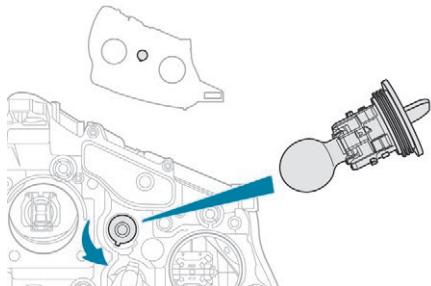
Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the engine fan – Risk of strangulation!

### **!** After changing a bulb

When refitting, close the protective cover very carefully to guarantee the sealing of the lamp.

## Direction indicators

**i** Rapid flashing of the direction indicator lamp (left or right) indicates that one of the bulbs on the corresponding side has failed.

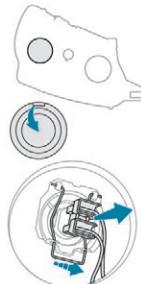


- ☞ Turn the connector a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
- ☞ Pull the bulb connector.
- ☞ Remove the bulb and replace it.

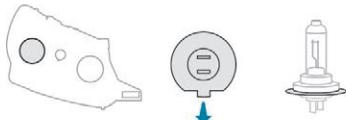
To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

**i** Amber coloured bulbs, such as the direction indicators, must be replaced by bulbs with identical colour and specifications.

### Dipped beam headlamps

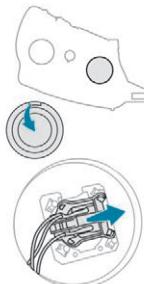


- ☞ Remove the protective cover by pulling on the tab.
- ☞ Disconnect the bulb connector.
- ☞ Spread the spring to release the bulb.
- ☞ Pull the bulb out and change it.

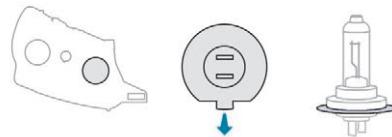


To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order, directing the positioning lug of the bulb downwards.

### Main beam headlamps

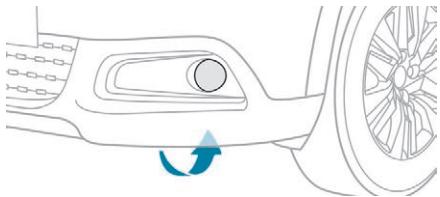


- ☞ Remove the protective cover by pulling on the tab.
- ☞ Disconnect the bulb connector.
- ☞ Pull the bulb out and change it.



To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order, directing the positioning lug of the bulb downwards.

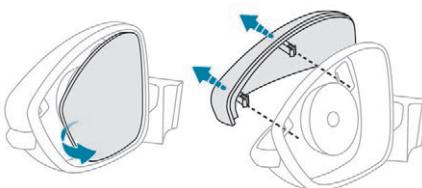
## Foglamps/directional lamps



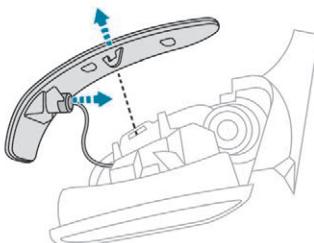
- ☞ The front foglamp is accessible through the aperture below the bumper.
- ☞ Disconnect the bulb holder connector by pressing on the top of the tab.
- ☞ Extract the bulb holder by pressing on the two clips (top and bottom).
- ☞ Replace the module.

**i** To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.  
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the module.  
To replace this type of bulb, you can also contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Integrated direction indicator side repeaters



- ☞ Insert a flat screwdriver between the door mirror glass and its base.
- ☞ Tilt the screwdriver and use it as a lever to extract the glass.
- ☞ Unclip the shell of the door mirror by pressing on the two fixing clips.

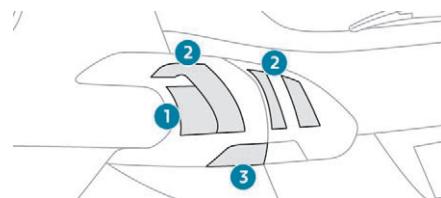


- ☞ Press the central tab and remove the side repeater.
- ☞ Pull out the bulb holder and replace the faulty bulb.

**i** To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

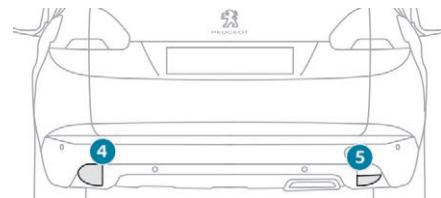
To replace this type of bulb, you can also contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Rear lamps



1. Brake lamps (LED).
2. Sidelamps (LED).
3. Direction indicators (LED).

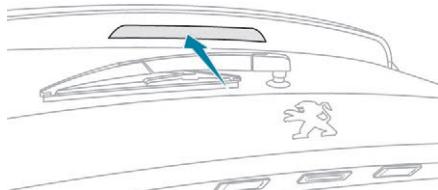
LEDs: light-emitting diodes.



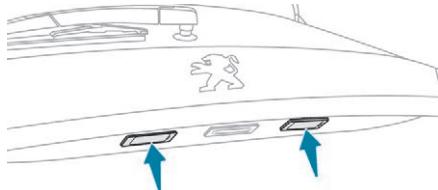
4. Foglamp (P21W).
5. Reversing lamp (P21W).

In the event of a breakdown

### Third brake lamp (LED)



### Number plate lamps

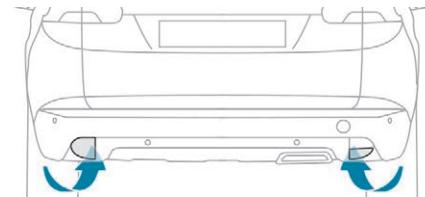


To facilitate removal, perform this procedure with the tailgate half open.

- ☞ Insert a thin screwdriver into the cut-out outside the lens.
- ☞ Push it outwards.
- ☞ Remove the lens.
- ☞ Replace the faulty bulb.

To refit, press the lens to clip it in.

### Foglamps and reversing lamps



For access, pass your hand under the bumper.

- ☞ Turn the bulb holder an eighth of a turn and pull it out.
- ☞ Replace the faulty bulb.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

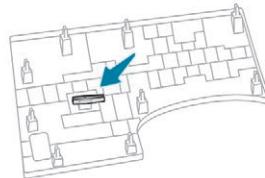
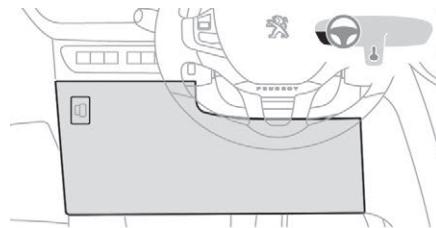
**!** On the left-hand side, be sure not to touch the exhaust pipe; risk of burns if changing a bulb after stopping the engine.

## Changing a fuse

### Access to the tools

The extraction tweezers are fitted to the back of the dashboard or glove box fusebox cover.

### Dashboard



- ☞ Unclip the cover by pulling at the top left, then right.
- ☞ Disengage the cover fully and turn it over.
- ☞ Remove the carrier on which the tweezers are fitted.

## Glove box



- Open the glove box lid.
- Unclip the fusebox cover by pulling at the top right.
- Disengage the cover fully and turn it over.
- Remove the carrier on which the tweezers are fitted.

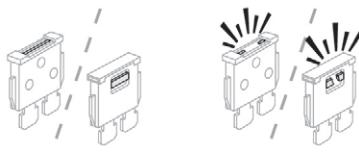
Before changing a fuse:

- immobilise the vehicle and switch off the ignition,
- all electrical consumers must be switched off,
- identify the failed fuse using the allocation tables and the diagrams given in the following pages.

To remove or fit a fuse, it is essential to:

- use the special tweezers to extract the fuse from its housing and check the condition of its filament.
- always replace the failed fuse with a fuse of the same rating (same colour); use of a different rating may cause malfunctions (risk of fire).

If the fuse fails again soon after replacement, have the vehicle's electrical system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



Tweezers

**i** Professional repairers: for full information on the fuses and relays, consult the "Methods" wiring information and diagrams available from a PEUGEOT dealer.

**i** The fuse allocation tables and the corresponding diagrams are available from a PEUGEOT dealer or from a qualified workshop.

**!** The replacement of a fuse not shown in the allocation tables below may cause a serious malfunction of your vehicle. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Installing electrical accessories

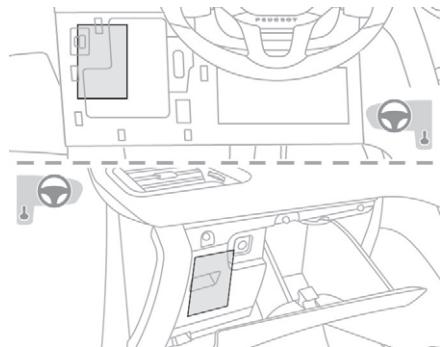
**i** Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.

Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

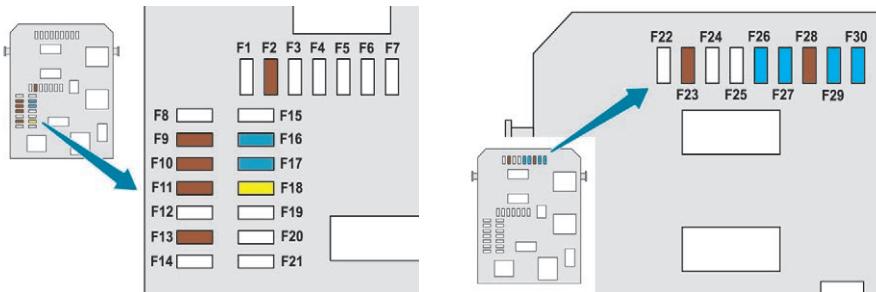
**!** PEUGEOT accepts no responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing your vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied and not recommended by PEUGEOT and not installed in accordance with specifications, in particular when the combined power consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

## Left-hand side

### Access to the fuses



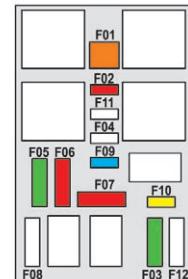
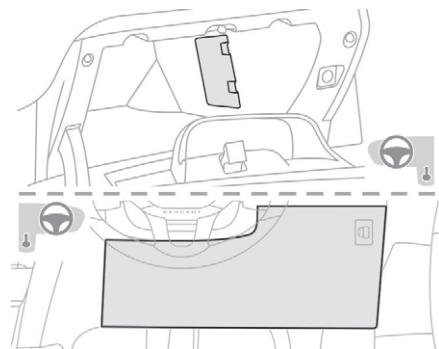
Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
<b>F2</b>	<b>5 A</b>	Door mirrors, headlamps, diagnostic socket.
<b>F9</b>	<b>5 A</b>	Alarm.
<b>F10</b>	<b>5 A</b>	Independent telematic unit.
<b>F11</b>	<b>5 A</b>	Electrochrome rear view mirror, additional heating, Active City Brake.
<b>F13</b>	<b>5 A</b>	Hi-Fi amplifier, parking sensors, reversing camera.
<b>F16</b>	<b>15 A</b>	Front 12 V socket.
<b>F17</b>	-	Not used.
<b>F18</b>	<b>20 A</b>	Touch screen, audio system.



Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
<b>F23</b>	<b>5 A</b>	Vanity mirrors, map reading lamps.
<b>F26</b>	<b>15 A</b>	Horn.
<b>F27</b>	<b>15 A</b>	Screenwash pump.
<b>F28</b>	<b>5 A</b>	Anti-theft.
<b>F29</b>	<b>15 A</b>	Air conditioning compressor.
<b>F30</b>	<b>15 A</b>	Rear wiper.

## Right-hand side

### Access to the fuses

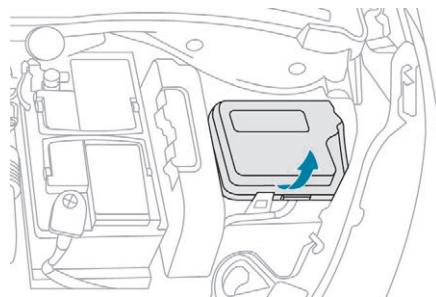


Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
<b>F01</b>	<b>40 A</b>	Heated rear screen.
<b>F02</b>	<b>10 A</b>	Heated door mirrors.
<b>F03</b>	<b>30 A</b>	Front one-touch windows.
<b>F04</b>	<b>-</b>	Heated front seats.
<b>F05</b>	<b>30 A</b>	Rear one-touch windows.
<b>F06</b>	<b>10 A</b>	Folding door mirrors.
<b>F07</b>	<b>10 A</b>	Folding door mirrors.
<b>F08</b>	<b>-</b>	Not used.
<b>F09</b>	<b>15 A</b>	Front heated seats, front electric windows (not one-touch).
<b>F10</b>	<b>20 A</b>	Hi-Fi amplifier.
<b>F11</b>	<b>-</b>	Not used.
<b>F12</b>	<b>-</b>	Not used.

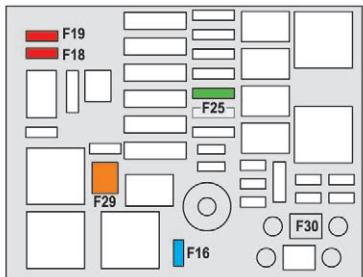
## Engine compartment

The fusebox is located in the engine compartment near the battery (left-hand side).

### Access to the fuses



- ☞ Unclip the cover.
- ☞ Replace the fuse (see corresponding section).
- ☞ When you have finished, close the cover very carefully to ensure correct sealing of the fusebox.



Fuse no.	Rating	Functions
<b>F16</b>	<b>15 A</b>	Daytime running lamps.
<b>F18</b>	<b>10 A</b>	Right-hand main beam headlamp.
<b>F19</b>	<b>10 A</b>	Left-hand main beam headlamp.
<b>F25</b>	<b>30 A</b>	Headlamp washer relay (after-market).
<b>F29</b>	<b>40 A</b>	Front wiper motor.
<b>F30</b>	<b>80 A</b>	Pre-heater plugs (Diesel).

## 12 V battery

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or charging a discharged battery.

### General points

#### Lead-acid starter batteries



Batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead.

They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste.

Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.



Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery.

All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, so as to avoid the risk of explosion or fire.

Wash your hands afterwards.

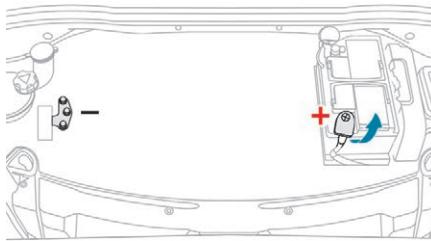
**!** Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery of specific technology and specification. Its replacement should be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** If you have an electronic or automatic gearbox, never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

**i** The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start. In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

## Access to the battery

The battery is located under the bonnet. To access it:



- open the bonnet using the interior release lever, then the exterior safety catch,
- secure the bonnet stay,
- lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal.

**!** The battery (-) terminal is not accessible. A remote earth point is located on the right side of the engine mounting.

## Starting using another battery

When your vehicle's battery is discharged, the engine can be started using a backup battery (external or from another vehicle) and jump leads or using a battery booster.

**!** Never try to start the engine by connecting a battery charger.

Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.

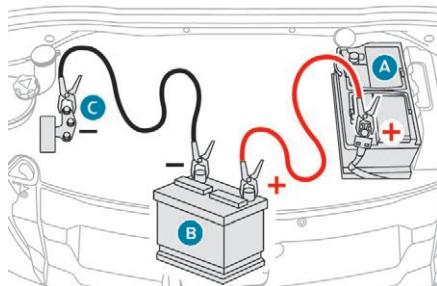
Check beforehand that the backup battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.

The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.

Switch off all the electrical consumers on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).

Make sure that the jump leads are not close to moving parts of the engine (fan, belts, etc.).

Do not disconnect the (+) terminal while the engine is running.



- Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.

- ☞ Connect the red cable to the (+) terminal of flat battery **A** (at the metal elbow) then to the (+) terminal of backup battery **B** or the booster.
- ☞ Connect one end of the green or black cable to the (-) terminal of backup battery **B** or the booster (or an earth point on the vehicle with the good battery).
- ☞ Connect the other end of the green or black cable to earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle.
- ☞ Start the engine of the vehicle with the good battery and leave it running for a few minutes.
- ☞ Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run.

If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.

- ☞ Wait until the engine returns to idle then disconnect the jump lead cables in reverse order.
- ☞ Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.
- ☞ Allow the engine to run for at least 30 minutes, by driving or with the vehicle stationary, so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

**i** Some functions, including Stop & Start, are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.

## Charging the battery using a battery charger

For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.

In some circumstances it may be necessary to charge the battery:

- if you only use your vehicle for short journeys,
- if the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.

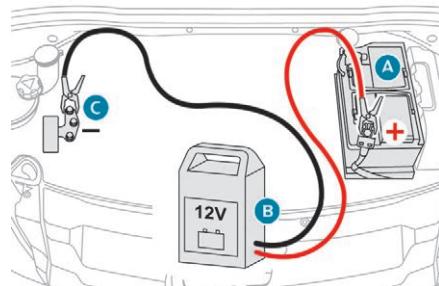
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** If you plan to charge your vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries of a nominal voltage of 12 V.

**!** Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger. Never reverse polarities.

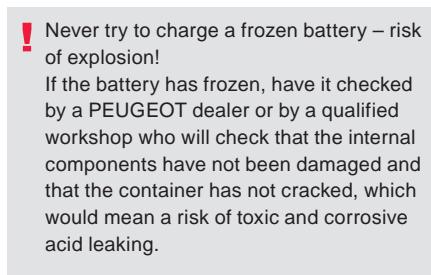
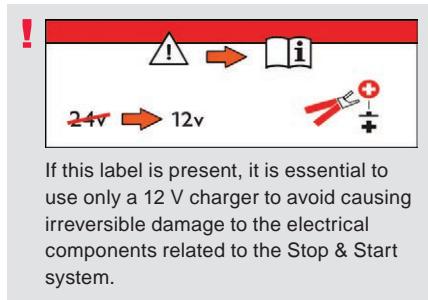
**i** It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers,etc.).



- ☞ Switch off the charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
- ☞ Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
- ☞ Raise the plastic cover, if your vehicle has one, on the (+) terminal.
- ☞ Connect the charger **B** cables as follows:
  - the (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of the battery **A**,
  - the (-) black cable to the earth point **C** on the vehicle.
- ☞ At the end of the charging operation, switch off the charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from the battery **A**.

In the event of a breakdown



## Disconnecting the battery

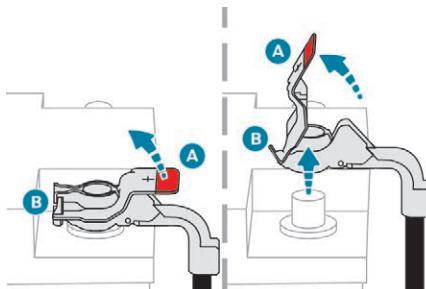
In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, it is recommended that the battery be disconnected if the vehicle is taken out of service for a long period.

Before disconnecting the battery:

- close all openings (doors, boot, windows, etc.),
- switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.),
- switch off the ignition and wait for 4 minutes.  
At the battery, it is only necessary to disconnect the (+) terminal.

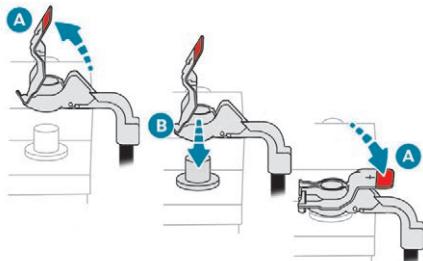
### Quick-release terminal clamp

#### Disconnecting the (+) terminal



- Raise lever A fully to release clamp B.
- Remove clamp B by lifting it off.

### Reconnecting the (+) terminal



Do not force the lever as locking will not be possible if the clamp is not positioned correctly; start the procedure again.

## Before disconnecting

Wait 2 minutes after switching off the ignition before disconnecting the battery.

Close the windows and the doors before disconnecting the battery.

## Following reconnection

After each time that the battery has been reconnected, switch on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting the engine, to allow the electronic systems to initialise. However, if minor problems persist after this procedure, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

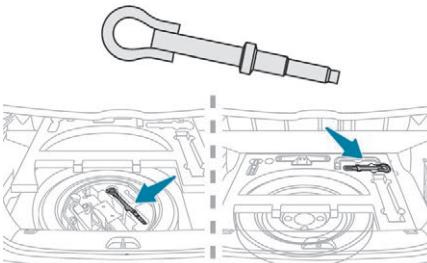
Referring to the corresponding section, you must yourself reinitialise:

- the remote control key,
- the date and time,
- the preset radio stations.

## Towing

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using a removable towing eye.

### Towing eye



The towing eye is installed in the boot under the floor.

To gain access:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ lift the floor and remove it,
- ☞ remove the towing eye from the carrier box.



### General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in your country.

Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.

The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.

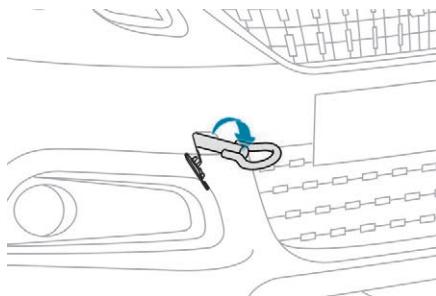
When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towbar: rope and straps are prohibited.

The towing vehicle must move off gently. When the vehicle is towed with its engine off, there is no longer braking and steering assistance.

In the following cases, you must always call on a professional recovery service:

- vehicle broken down on a motorway or fast road,
- four-wheel drive vehicle,
- when it is not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake,
- when it is not possible to tow a vehicle with an automatic gearbox, engine running,
- towing with only two wheels on the ground,
- where there is no approved towbar, etc. available.

## Towing your vehicle



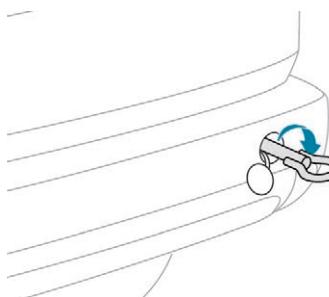
- ☞ On the front bumper, unclip the cover by inserting the flat end of the towing eye in the slot at the bottom of the cover.
- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Install the towbar.



- ☞ Put the gear lever into neutral. Failure to follow this instruction may cause damage to some components (braking, transmission, etc.) and the absence of braking assistance when the engine is restarted.

- ☞ Unlock the steering by turning the key in the ignition by one notch and release the parking brake.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- ☞ Set off gently and drive slowly for a short distance.

## Towing another vehicle



- ☞ On the rear bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom.
- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Install the towbar.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- ☞ Set off gently and drive slowly for a short distance.

# Engine technical data and towed loads

## Engines

The engine characteristics are given on the vehicle's registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

**i** The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Weights and towed loads

The weights and towed loads relating to your vehicle are indicated on the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

These values are also indicated on the manufacturer's plate or label.

For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

The GTW values and the towed loads listed are valid for a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres. The towed load must be reduced by steps of 10% for each additional 1,000 metres. The maximum authorised nose weight corresponds to the weight permitted on the towball.

**GTW:** Gross train weight.

**i** If the exterior temperature is high, it is recommended that the engine be allowed to idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to facilitate its cooling.

**!** When exterior temperatures are high, the vehicle performance may be limited in order to protect the engine. When the exterior temperature is higher than 37°C, limit the towed weight.

**!** Towing using a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect roadholding. Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer. When using a vehicle to tow, never exceed a speed of approximately 60 mph (100 km/h) (observe the local legislation in force).

## Petrol engines and towed loads

Engines	1.2 litre PureTech 82	1.2 litre PureTech 82 S&S	1.2 litre PureTech 110 S&S		1.2 litre PureTech 110 S&S	
Gearboxes	BVM (Manual 5-speed)	BVM (Manual 5-speed)	BVM (Manual 5-speed)		EAT6 (Auto 6-speed)	
Codes	KQ5 (EB2F MA)	LEJ (EB2FA MA STT)	CQJ (EB2DT BE STT)	CZJ (EB2DTM BE STT)	CQQ (EB2DT AT6III STT)	CZQ (EB2DTM AT6III STT)
Model codes	CUHMZ0 CUHMZ6	CUHMRP/S	CUHNZ6/S	CUHNV6/S	CUHNZT/S	CUHNV/S
Cubic capacity (cm <sup>3</sup> )	1,199	1,199	1,199		1,199	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	60	60	81		81	
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded		Unleaded	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10 or 12% gradient	1,100	1,100	1,270	750	1,250	450
Unbraked trailer (kg)	560	560	580	450	610	450
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	51	51	51	51	51	51

## Petrol engines and towed loads

Engines	1.2 litre PureTech 110 S&S	1.2 litre PureTech 130 S&S		1.6 litre VTI 115
Gearboxes	EAT6 (Auto 6-speed)	BVM6 (Manual 6-speed)	BVM6 (Manual 6-speed)	EAT6 (Auto 6-speed)
Codes	LGQ (EB2ADT AT6III STT)	CRK (EB2DTS MCM STT)	LHK (EB2ADTS MB6 STT)	EFM (EC5F AT6III)
Model codes	CUHNP/S CUHNP/1S CUHNP/2S	CUHNYM/S	CUHNSS/S CUHNSS/1S CUHNSS/2S	CUNFPT
Cubic capacity (cm <sup>3</sup> )	1,199	1,199	1,199	1,587
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	81	96	96	85
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10 or 12% gradient	1,250	1,270	1,250	1,270
Unbraked trailer (kg)	630	580	600	570
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	51	51	51	51

## Diesel engines and towed loads

Engines	1.5 litre BlueHDi 100 S&S	1.5 litre BlueHDi 120 S&S	1.6 litre BlueHDi 75	1.6 litre e-HDi 92	1.6 litre BlueHDi 100	
Gearboxes	BVM6 (Manual 6-speed)	EAT6 (Auto 6-speed)	BVM (Manual 5-speed)	BVM (Manual 5-speed)	BVM (Manual 5-speed)	
Codes	MDK (DV5RD MB6 STT)	MBQ (DV5RCD AT6III STT)	KM5 (DV6FE BE)	BFJ (DV6D BE STT)	KE5 (DV6FD BE)	
Model codes	CUYHYS/S CUYHYS/1S CUYHYS/2S	CUYHXN/S CUYHXN/1S CUYHXN/2S	CUBHW6	CU9HP0/S	CUBHYK	CUBHY6
Cubic capacity (cm <sup>3</sup> )	1,499	1,499	1,560	1,560	1,560	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	75	88	55	68	70	
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10 or 12% gradient	1,260	1,270	940	1,270	820	1,270
Unbraked trailer (kg)	640	640	610	610	500	610
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	51	51	51	51	51	51

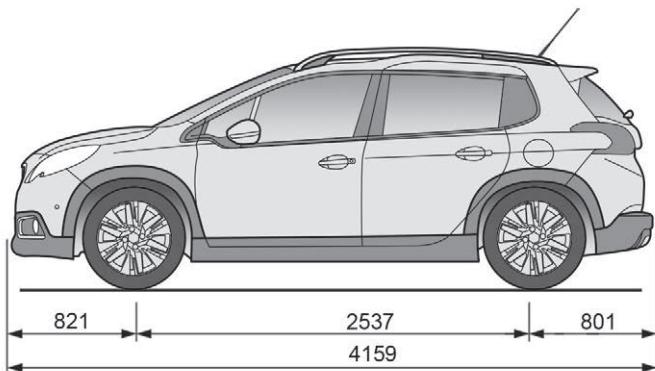
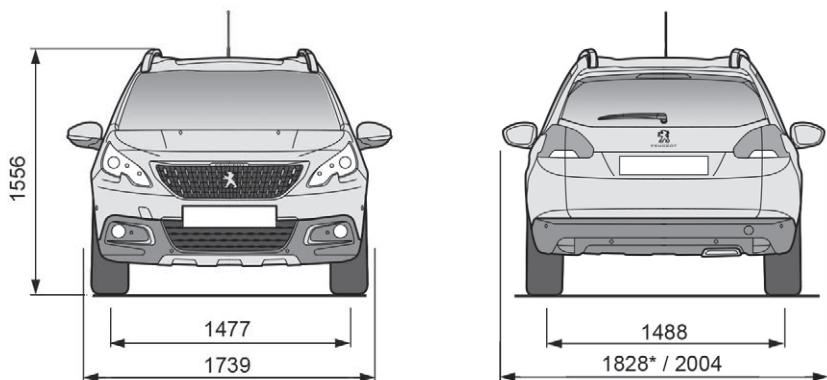
## Diesel engines and towed loads

Engines	1.6 litre BlueHDi 100 S&S		1.6 litre BlueHDi 100 S&S	1.6 litre BlueHDi 116 S&S*	1.6 litre BlueHDi 120 S&S
Gearboxes	BVM (Manual 5-speed)		ETG6 (Electronic 6-speed)	BVM6 (Manual 6-speed)	BVM6 (Manual 6-speed)
Codes	KEJ (DV6FD BE STT)		KES (DV6FD MCP STT)	LAK (DV6FCD MCM STT)	KDK (DV6FC MCM STT)
Model codes	CUBHYK/S	CUBHY6/S	CUBHYM/1PS	CUBHXM/S	CUBHZM/S
Cubic capacity (cm <sup>3</sup> )	1,560		1,560	1,560	1,560
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	70		70	85	88
Fuel	Diesel		Diesel	Diesel	Diesel
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10 or 12% gradient	820	1,270	1,070	1,300	1,300
Unbraked trailer (kg)	500	610	610	620	620
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	51	51	51	51	51

\* For Belgium only.

## Dimensions (in mm)

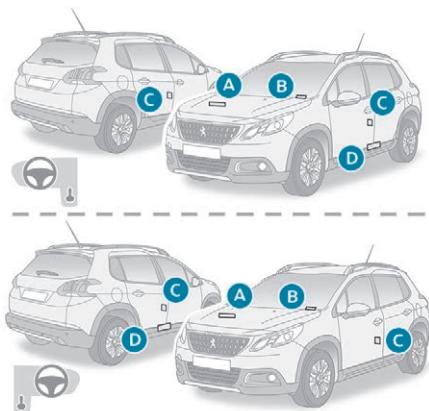
These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.



\* Mirrors folded in.

## Identification markings

Different visible markings for the identification and research of your vehicle.



**A. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), under the bonnet.**

This number is engraved on the bodywork near the suspension damper mounting.

**B. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), on the dashboard.**

This number is recorded on a label, visible through the windscreens.

**C. Manufacturer's label.**

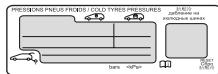
This tamper proof label is affixed to the centre pillar, right or left side.

It bears the following information:

- the name of the manufacturer,
- the European Whole Vehicle Type Approval number,
- the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN),
- the maximum authorised vehicle weight (the Gross Vehicle Weight or GVW),
- the maximum authorised vehicle + trailer weight (the Gross Train Weight or GTW),
- the maximum weight on the front axle,
- the maximum weight on the rear axle.

**i** The vehicle may be originally equipped with tyres with higher load and speed indices than those indicated on the label, without affecting inflation pressure.

#### D. Tyre/paint label.



This label is affixed to the centre pillar on the driver's side.

It bears the following information on the tyres:

- the tyre inflation pressures with and without load,
- the tyre specification, made up of the dimensions and type as well as the load and speed indices,
- the spare tyre pressure.

It also indicates the paint colour code.



## PEUGEOT Connect Radio



## Multimedia audio system – Applications – Bluetooth® telephone

### Contents

First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	3
Menus	4
Applications	5
Radio	6
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	8
Media	9
Telephone	11
Settings	16
Frequently asked questions	18

**i** The different functions and settings described vary depending on the version and configuration of your vehicle.

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

**i** The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. The display of the **Energy Economy Mode** message signals that a change to standby is imminent.

**i** The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.  
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/>  
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/>

## First steps



With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.

With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.

Increase or decrease the volume using the wheel or the "plus" or "minus" buttons (depending on the equipment).

Use the buttons on either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons on the left of the touch screen for access to the rolling menus display, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

You can display the rolling menus display, at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

All of the touch areas of the screen are white. For pages with multiple tabs at the bottom of the screen, you can switch between pages either by tapping the tab for the desired page, or by using a finger, sliding the pages to the left or to the right.

Press in the grey zone to go back a level or confirm.

Press the back arrow to go back a level or confirm.



The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.

To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.

Do not use sharp objects on the screen.

Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper banner of the touch screen:

- Reminder of the air conditioning information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Reminder of the Radio Media and Telephone menu information.
- Reminder of the privacy information.
- Access to the Settings of the touch screen and digital instrument panel.

Selecting the sound source (depending on equipment):

- FM/DAB/AM radio stations (depending on equipment).
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast (streaming).
- USB memory stick.
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on equipment).
- CD player (depending on equipment).



In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, ambiances, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.

**i** In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes.  
The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

## Steering mounted controls

### Steering mounted controls – Type 1



#### Radio:

Select the previous/next preset radio station.

Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.

#### Media:

Select the previous/next track.

Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.



#### Radio:

Short press: display the list of radio stations.  
Long press: update the list.

#### Media:

Short press: display the list of folders.  
Long press: display the available sorting options.



Change audio source (radio; USB; AUX if equipment connected; CD; streaming).



Confirm a selection.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute/Restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

### Steering mounted controls – Type 2



#### Voice commands:

This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment).

Short press, smartphone voice commands via the system.



Increase volume.



Mute/Restore the sound.

Or

Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.

Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.



Decrease volume.



**Media** (short press): change the multimedia source.



**Telephone** (short press): start telephone call.

**Call in progress** (short press): access telephone menu.

**Telephone** (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.



**Radio** (rotate): automatic search for the previous/next station.

**Media** (rotate): previous/next track, move in a list.

**Short press**: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

**LIST**

**Radio**: display the list of stations.

**Media**: display the list of tracks.

**Radio** (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

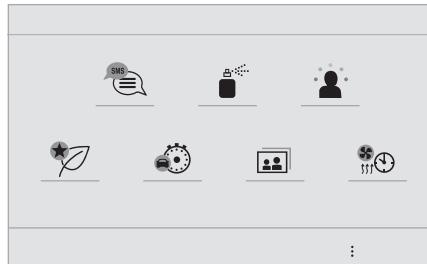
## Menus

## Applications

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Access configurable equipment.



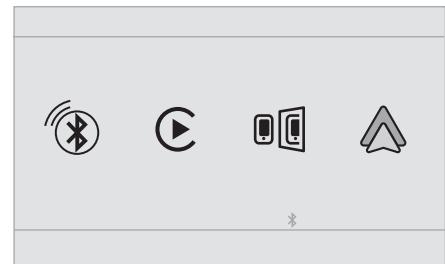
## Telephone

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®.

Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.

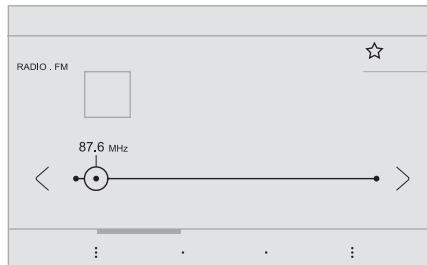


## Radio Media

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



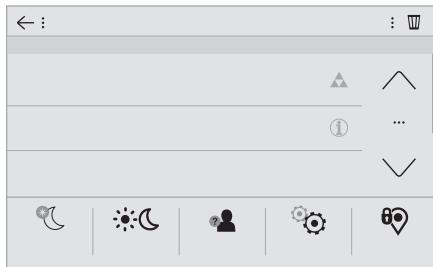
Select an audio source or radio station.



## Settings

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).



## Driving

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

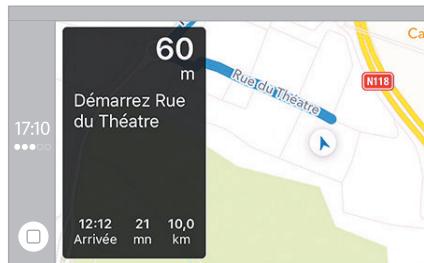
Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.



## Navigation

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

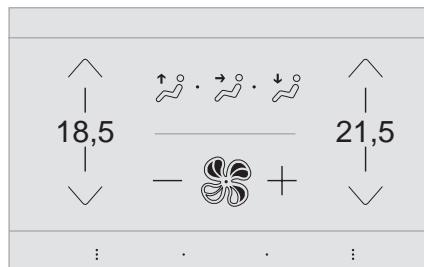
Configure the navigation and select your destination via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.



## Air conditioning

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

Manage various temperature and air flow settings.



## Applications

### Viewing photos

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB port.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system can read folders and image files in the formats: .tiff; .gif; .jpg/jpeg; .bmp; .png.



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.



Press "**Photos**".



Select a folder.



Select an image to view.



Press this button to display the details of the photo.



Press the back arrow to go back a level.

## Managing messages



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.



Press "SMS".



Select the "SMS" tab.



Press this button to select the display settings for messages.



Press this button to search and select a recipient.



Select the "Quick messages" tab.



Press this button to select the display settings for messages.



Press this button to write a new message.



Press the basket alongside the selected message to delete it.



Press this button alongside the selected message to display the secondary page.



Press this button to edit and modify the existing text.



Press this button to write a new message.



Press the basket to delete the message.



Press "OK" to confirm.



Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.

The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode.

This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

## Radio

### Selecting a station



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or



Move the cursor for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or



Press the frequency.



KHz



Enter the FM and AM waveband values using the virtual keypad.

## Changing waveband



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "Band" to change waveband.



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

## Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.

 Make a short press on the star outline. If the star is filled in, the radio station is already preset.

Or

Select a radio station or frequency.

Press "Preset".



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

## Activating/Deactivating RDS



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/Deactivate "**RDS**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

 The RDS, if activated, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of this RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

## Displaying text information

 The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.

 Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

 Activate/Deactivate "**News**".

 Press in the grey zone to confirm.

## Playing TA messages

 The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages.

To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/Deactivate "**TA**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

## Audio settings



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "Audio settings".



Select the "Tone" or "Balance" or "Sound" or "Voice" or "Ringtones" tab to configure the audio settings.



Press the back arrow to confirm.



In the "Tone" tab, the **Ambience** audio settings, as well as **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** are different and independent for each audio source.

In the "Balance" tab, the **All passengers**, **Driver** and **Front only** settings are common to all sources.

In the "Sound" tab, activate or deactivate "Volume linked to speed", "Auxiliary input" and "Touch tones".



The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys® system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.

**i** Onboard audio: Arkamys® Sound Staging optimises the distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

## DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

### Terrestrial Digital Radio

**!** Digital radio provides higher quality reception.

The different "multiplex/ensemble" services offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "OPTIONS" button to go to the secondary page.



Press **Band** to select the "DAB band".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

## FM-DAB Tracking

**i** "DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.

When the digital radio signal is poor, the "FM-DAB Tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding FM analogue station (if there is one).



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "OPTIONS" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/Deactivate "FM-DAB Tracking".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

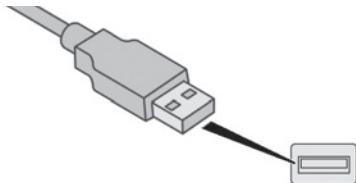


If "FM-DAB Tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to FM analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume. Once the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on FM, or if the "FM-DAB Tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

## Media

### USB port



Insert the USB memory stick in the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

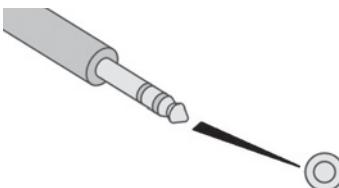
The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.

The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

### Auxiliary socket (AUX)

Depending on equipment



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

Operation of controls is via the portable device.

## Selecting the source



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**SOURCES**" button.

Choose the source.

### Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated, first adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).

Then adjust the volume of your system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.

Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.



! Once connected in Streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

### Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

**i** The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audiobooks/podcasts); you can also use a classification structured in the form of a library.

The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

## Information and advice

**!** The system supports USB Mass Storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.

Device management is done by the audio system controls.

Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

**!** To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wav", ".wma", ".aac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode. No other file types ("mp4", etc.) can be read. Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.

Sampling frequencies supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using special characters (e.g. " " ? . ; ¨) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

**i** It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device be used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet if possible when burning the CD.

If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same burning standard be always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

# Telephone

## MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.  
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

**i** The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's MirrorLink™ technology on the vehicle screen.

The processes and standards are constantly changing. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone be unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system**.

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

**!** As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

**i** The "MirrorLink™" function requires a compatible smartphone and applications.

### Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®

 Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

 From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

 Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**MirrorLink™**" function.

**OK** During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.  
Accept to start and complete the connection.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone

### Telephone connected by Bluetooth®



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to display the secondary page.



Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Once the connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.



There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

## CarPlay® smartphone connection

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.  
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

**i** The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications compatible with the smartphone's CarPlay® technology on the vehicle screen when the smartphone's CarPlay® function has been previously activated.

As the processes and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated**.

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

 Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

 From the system, press **Telephone** to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



If the smartphone is already connected by Bluetooth®.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

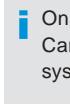


From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.



**i** On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.



**N** You can go to the CarPlay® navigation at any time by pressing the system's **Navigation** button.

## Android Auto smartphone connection

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.

All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



On your smartphone, download the Android Auto application.

**i** The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's Android Auto technology on the vehicle screen.

The processes and standards are constantly changing. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone be unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system**.

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

 As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

 The "Android Auto" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.

## Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®

 Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

 From the system, press "Telephone" to display the primary page.

 Press "Android Auto" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "Android Auto" function.

 During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.

Accept to start and complete the connection.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® is started on the smartphone

## Telephone connected by Bluetooth®



From the system, press "Telephone" to display the primary page.



Press "TEL" to display the secondary page.

Press "Android Auto" to start the application in the system.

Different audio sources remain accessible in the margin of the Android Auto display, using touch buttons in the upper bar.

Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.



There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

## Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

 As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

 Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

## Procedure from the telephone



Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

 To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

## Procedure from the system



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press "**Bluetooth search**".  
The list of telephones detected is displayed.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

**i** If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function in your telephone.

**i** Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

## Automatic reconnection

**i** On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the connection is established without any action on your part (Bluetooth activated).

## To modify the connection profile:



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Internet data**".



Select one or more profiles.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.



The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone.

All three profiles may connect by default.



The available services depend on the network, SIM card, and device Bluetooth compatibility. Consult your telephone's manual and your operator to find out which services are available to you.



The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

## Managing paired telephones



This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it. Press again to connect it.

## Deleting a telephone



Press the basket at the top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.



Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

## Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.

And



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.

Or



Press "**End call**".

## Making a call



Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.  
Park the vehicle.  
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

## Calling a new number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.

## Calling a contact



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button.

Press "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Press "**Call**".

## Calling a recently used number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Or



Make a long press



on the steering mounted button.

Press "**Recent calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

## Setting the ringtone



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Ring volume**" to display the volume bar.



Press the arrows or move the cursor to set the ring volume.

## Settings

### Profile settings

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, changes to settings must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**" or "**Profile 2**" or "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.



Press "**OK**" to save.



Press the back arrow to confirm.



Press this button to activate the profile.



Press the back arrow again to confirm.



Press this button to initialise the profile selected.

### Adjusting the brightness



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press **Brightness**.



Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (according to version).



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

### Modifying the system settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**System configuration**".

Press the "**Units**" tab to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Press the "**Factory settings**" tab to return to the initial settings.



Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default (depending on version).

Press the "**System info**" tab to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.

Press the "**Privacy**" tab,

or



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Privacy**" to activate or deactivate the privacy data mode.

Activate or deactivate:

- "No sharing (data, vehicle position)".
- "Data sharing only"
- "Sharing data and the vehicle position"

Press the back arrow to confirm.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Screen configuration**".

Press "**Brightness**".

- Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (according to version).

Press the back arrow to confirm.



Press "**Animation**".

- Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".

- Select "**Animated transitions**".



Press the back arrow to confirm.

## Selecting the language



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Language**" to change the language.



Press the back arrow to confirm.

## Setting the time



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Time**".



Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.



Press "**OK**" to save the time.



Press this button to define the time zone.



Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).



Activate or deactivate summer time (+1 hour).



Activate or deactivate synchronisation with GPS (UTC).



Press the back arrow to save the settings.



The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

## Setting the date



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Date**".



Press this button to define the date.



Press the back arrow to save the date.



Select the display format of the date.



Press the back arrow again to confirm.



Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS Synchronisation" is deactivated.

## Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your system.

## Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the upper band to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) blocks reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of received stations. The name of the radio station changes.	The station is not received or has changed its name in the list.	Press the round arrow on the "List" tab of the "Radio" page.
	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets these details as the station name.	

## Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
Some information characters in the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.	The connected device does not automatically launch playback.	Start playback from the device.
Names of tracks and playing time are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

## Telephone

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone has Bluetooth switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone on the Brand's website (services).
Android Auto and CarPlay do not work.	Android Auto and CarPlay may not activate if the USB cables are of poor quality.	Use authentic USB cables to ensure compatibility.
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The sound depends on both the system and the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, etc.).
The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the telephone directory display settings.

## Settings

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
When changing the setting of treble and bass, the ambience setting is deselected. When changing the ambience setting, the treble and bass settings are reset.	The selection of an ambience setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice versa.	Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected. When changing the distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice versa.	Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. Adjust the audio functions to the middle position.
When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.	Start the engine to increase the charge of the battery.

## PEUGEOT Connect Nav



## GPS satellite navigation – Applications – Multimedia audio system – Bluetooth® telephone

Contents	
First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	3
Menus	3
Voice commands	5
Navigation	11
Connected navigation	13
Applications	16
Radio	21
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	22
Media	23
Telephone	25
Settings	29
Frequently asked questions	32

**i** The different functions and settings described vary depending on the version and configuration of your vehicle.

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

**i** The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. The display of the **Energy Economy Mode** message signals that a change to standby is imminent.

**i** The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.  
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/>  
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/>

## First steps



With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.

With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.



Adjustment of the volume.

Use the buttons either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons on the left of the touch screen for access to the rolling menus display, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

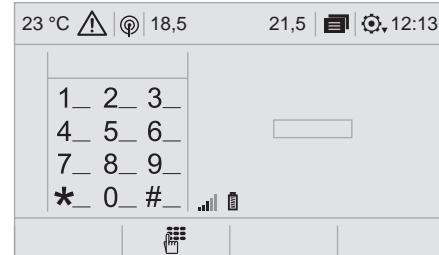
You can display the rolling menus display at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

All of the touch areas of the screen are white. Press the cross to go back a level. Press "OK" to confirm.

! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.

To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.

Do not use sharp objects on the screen. Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

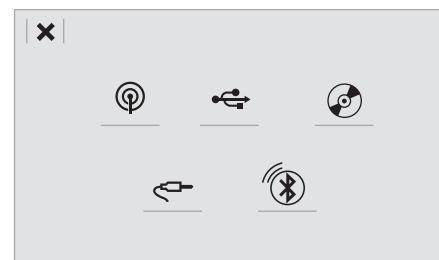


Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper band of the touch screen:

- Reminder of the air conditioning information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Go directly to the selection of the audio source, to the list of radio stations (or list of titles depending on the source).
- Go to the message notifications, emails, map updates and, depending on the services, the navigation notifications.
- Go to the settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.

Selecting the audio source (depending on version):

- FM/DAB\*/AM\* radios.
- USB memory stick.
- CD Player (depending on model).
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on model).
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast\* (streaming).



\* Depending on equipment.

**i** In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.

**i** In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes  
The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

## Steering mounted controls

Depending on model



### Voice commands:

This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on model).

Short press, system voice commands.

Long press, smartphone voice commands via the system.

 Increase volume.

or



Mute/Restore the sound.

Or

Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.

or



Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

 Decrease volume.

or



 **Media** (short press): change the multimedia source.

**Telephone** (short press): start telephone call.

or

 **Call in progress** (short press): access telephone menu.  
**Telephone** (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.



or



**Radio** (rotate): automatic search for the previous/next station.

**Media** (rotate): previous/next track, move in a list.



**Short press:** confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

**LIST** **Radio:** display the list of stations.

**Media:** display the list of tracks.

**Radio** (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

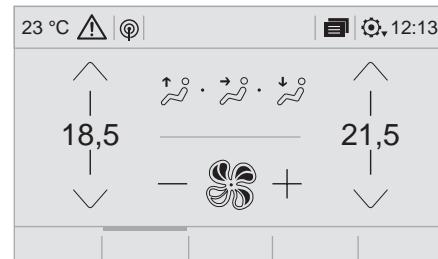
## Menus

Depending on model/Depending on version

### Air conditioning

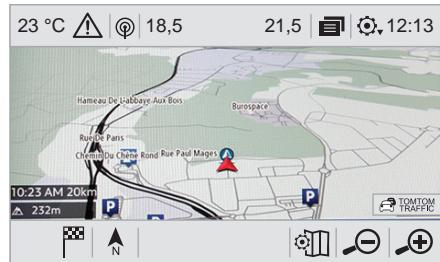


Manage various temperature and air flow settings.



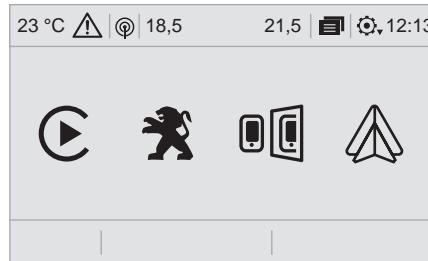
## Connected navigation

-  Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.
- or**
- NAV** Use services available in real time, depending on equipment.



## Applications

-  Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ or Android Auto.
- or**
- APPS** Check the state of the Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi connections.

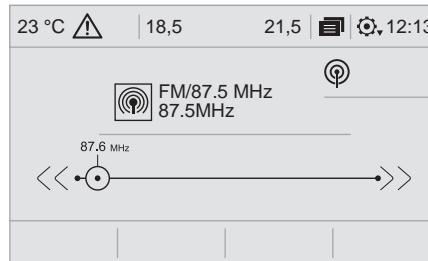


## Radio Media

Select an audio source, a radio station, display photographs.

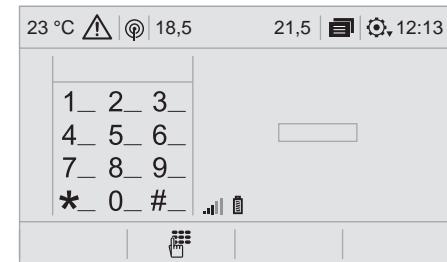
or

## MEDIA



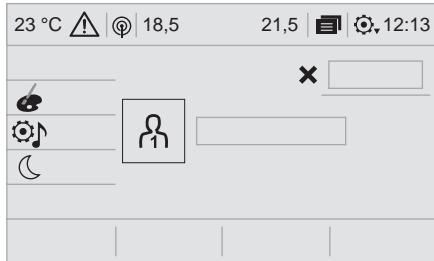
## Telephone

-  Connect a telephone via Bluetooth®, read messages and emails and send quick messages.
- or**
- TEL**



## Settings

-  Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).
- or**
- SETUP**



## Vehicle



Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.

or

**DRIVE**



## Voice commands

### Steering mounted controls



Pressing this button activates the voice commands function.



To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please observe the following recommendations:

- speak in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.
- always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before speaking.
- for best operation, it is recommended that the windows and sunroof be closed to avoid extraneous interference (depending on version).
- before making a voice command, ask other passengers not to speak.

## First steps



Example of a "voice command" for navigation:

**"Navigate to address, 11 Regent Street, London".**

Example of a "voice command" for the radio and media:

**"Play artist, Madonna".**

Example of a "voice command" for the telephone:

**"Call David Miller".**



The voice commands, with a choice of 12 languages (English, French, Italian, Spanish, German, Dutch, Portuguese, Polish, Turkish, Russian, Arabic, Brazilian), are made using the language previously chosen and set in the system. For some voice commands, there are alternative synonyms.

Example: Guide to/Navigate to/Go to/...

The voice commands in Arabic for:

"Navigate to address" and "Display POI in the city" are not available.

## Information – Using the system



Press the Push To Talk voice command button and tell me what you'd like after the tone. Remember you can interrupt me at any time by pressing this button. If you press it again while I'm waiting for you to speak, it'll end the conversation. If you need to start over, say "cancel". If you want to undo something, say "undo". And to get information and tips at any time, just say "help". If you ask me to do something and there's some information missing that I need, I'll give you some examples or take you through it step by step. There's more information available in "beginner" mode. You can set the dialogue mode to "expert" when you feel comfortable.

## Global voice commands

These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

Voice commands	Help messages
<b>Help</b>	There are lots of topics I can help you with. You can say: "help with phone", "help with navigation", "help with media" or "help with radio". For an overview on how to use voice controls, you can say "help with voice controls".
<b>Voice command help</b>	
<b>Navigation help</b>	
<b>Radio help</b>	
<b>Media help</b>	
<b>Telephone help</b>	
<b>Set dialogue mode as &lt;...&gt;</b>	Choose "beginner" or "expert" mode.
<b>Select profile &lt;...&gt;</b>	Select profile 1, 2 or 3.
<b>Yes</b>	Say "yes" if I got that right. Otherwise, say "no" and we'll start that again.
<b>No</b>	

## "Navigation" voice commands

**i** These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

Voice commands	Help messages
<b>Navigate home</b>	To start guidance or add a stopover, say "navigate to" and then the address or contact name. For example, "navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London", or "navigate to contact, John Miller". You can specify if it's a preferred or recent destination. For example, "navigate to preferred address, Tennis club", "navigate to recent destination, 11 Regent Street, London". Otherwise, just say, "navigate home". To see points of interest on a map, you can say things like "show hotels in Banbury" or "show nearby petrol station". For more information you can ask for "help with route guidance".
<b>Navigate to work</b>	
<b>Navigate to preferred address &lt;...&gt;</b>	
<b>Navigate to contact &lt;...&gt;</b>	
<b>Navigate to address &lt;...&gt;</b>	
<b>Show nearby POI &lt;...&gt;</b>	
<b>Remaining distance</b>	To get information about your current route, you can say "tell me the remaining time", "distance" or "arrival time". Try saying "help with navigation" to learn more commands.
<b>Remaining time</b>	
<b>Arrival time</b>	
<b>Stop route guidance</b>	

**i** Depending on the country, give the destination instructions (address) in the language used by the system.

## "Radio Media" voice commands

 These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

 Voice commands	 Help messages
<b>Tune to channel &lt;...&gt;</b>	You can pick a radio station by saying "tune to" and the station name or frequency. For example "tune to channel Talksport" or "tune to 98.5 FM". To listen to a preset radio station, say "tune to preset number". For example "tune to preset number five".
<b>What's playing</b>	To display the details of the current "track", "artist" and "album", you can say "What's playing".
<b>Play song &lt;...&gt;</b>	Use the command "play" or "listen to" to select the type of music you'd like to hear. You can pick by "song", "artist", or "album". Just say something like "play artist, Madonna", "play song, Hey Jude", or "play album, Thriller".
<b>Play artist &lt;...&gt;</b>	
<b>Play album &lt;...&gt;</b>	

 Media voice commands are available only for a USB connection.

## "Telephone" voice commands

- If a telephone is connected to the system, these voice commands can be issued from any main screen page after pressing the "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.  
If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone", and the voice session will be closed.

Voice commands	Help messages
<b>Call contact &lt;...&gt;*</b>	To make a phone call, say "call" followed by the contact name, for example: "Call David Miller". You can also include the phone type, for example: "Call David Miller at home". To make a call by number, say "dial" followed by the phone number, for example, "Dial 07776 835 417". You can check your voicemail by saying "call voicemail". To send a text, say "send quick message to", followed by the contact, and then the name of the quick message you'd like to send. For example, "send quick message to David Miller, I'll be late". To display the list of calls, say "display calls". For more information on SMS, you can say "help with texting".
<b>Dial &lt;...&gt;*</b>	
<b>Display contacts*</b>	
<b>Display calls*</b>	
<b>Call (message box   voicemail)*</b>	

\* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

## "Text message" voice commands

If a telephone is connected to the system, these voice commands can be issued from any main screen page after pressing the "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone", and the voice session will be closed.

Voice commands	Help messages
<b>Send text to &lt;...&gt;</b> <b>Listen to most recent message*</b>	<p>To hear your messages, you can say "listen to most recent message". When you want to send a text, there's a set of quick messages ready for you to use. Just use the quick message name and say something like "send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late". Check the phone menu for the names of the supported messages.</p> <p>Please say "call" or "send quick message to", and then select a line from the list. To move around a list shown on the display, you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". To undo your selection, say "undo". To cancel the current action and start again, say "cancel".</p>

\* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

The system only sends pre-recorded "Quick messages".

# Navigation

## Choice of a destination

### To a new destination



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

**NAV**

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Enter address**".



Select the "**Country**".



Enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" and confirm by pressing on the suggestions displayed.

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

And/Or



Select "**See on map**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

Zoom out/zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

In order to be able to use the navigation, it is necessary to fill in the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" on the virtual keyboard or take it from the list in "**Contact**" or in the "**History**" of addresses.

Without confirmation of the street number, you will be guided to one end of the street.

**OK** Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

Select "**Position**" to visualise the arrival point geographically.

### To "**My home**" or "**My work**"



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

**NAV**

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Preferred**" tab.



Select "**My home**".

Or



Select "**My work**".

Or

Select a preset favourite destination.

## Towards a contact

 Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.  
or  
**NAV**

Press the " **MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.

 Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Contact**" tab.

Select a contact in the list to start navigation.

## Towards points of interest (POI)

Points of Interest (POI) are listed in different categories.

 Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.  
or  
**NAV**

Press the " **MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Points of interest**".



Select the "**Travel**", or "**Leisure**" or "**Commercial**" or "**Public**" or "**Geographic**" tab.

Or



Select "**Search**" to enter the name and address of a POI.



Press "**OK**" to start calculation of the route.

## To a point on the map



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

**NAV**

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.

Select the destination by pressing on the map.



Tap the screen to place a marker and display the sub-menu.



Press this button to start navigation.



Press this button to save the address displayed.



A long press on an item opens a list of POIs nearby.

## Towards GPS coordinates



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

**NAV**

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.



Press this button to display the world map.

Using the grid, select by zoom the desired country or region.



Press this button to enter the GPS coordinates.



A marker is displayed in the middle of the screen, with the "**Latitude**" and "**Longitude**" coordinates.



Press this button to start navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the address displayed.

OR



Press this button to enter the value for "**Latitude**" using the virtual keypad.

And



Press this button to enter the value for "**Longitude**" using the virtual keypad.

## TMC (Traffic Message Channel)



TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages are linked to a European standard on the broadcasting of traffic information via the RDS system on FM radio, transmitting traffic information in real time.

The TMC information is then displayed on a GPS Navigation system map and taken into account straight away during navigation, so as to avoid accidents, traffic jams and closed roads.



The display of danger zones depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

## Connected navigation

Depending on version

Depending on the equipment level of the vehicle

## Network connection provided by the vehicle



OR

## Network connection provided by the user



## Connected navigation connection



As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.

All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



For access to connected navigation, you can use the connection provided by the vehicle via the "Emergency or assistance call" services or use your smartphone as a modem.

**Activate and enter settings for sharing the smartphone connection.**

## Network connection provided by the vehicle



The system is automatically connected to the modem included for the "Emergency or assistance calls" services and does not require a connection provided by the user via their smartphone.

## Network connection provided by the user

### USB connection



Connect a USB cable.  
The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

### Bluetooth connection



Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is visible to all (see the "Applications" section).

### Wi-Fi connection



Select a Wi-Fi network found by the system and connect to it (see the "Applications" section).

#### Restrictions of use:

- With CarPlay®, connection sharing is only with a Wi-Fi connection.
- With MirrorLink™, connection sharing is only with a USB connection.

The quality of services depends on the quality of the network connection.



With the arrival of "TOMTOM TRAFFIC", the services are available.

#### The services offered with connected navigation are as follows.

A Connected Services pack:

- Weather,
- Filling stations,
- Car park,
- Traffic,
- POI local search.

A Danger zone pack (option).

The processes and standards are constantly changing; for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, we recommend that you **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system.**

## Settings specific to connected navigation

In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.

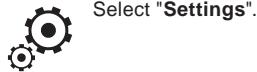


Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

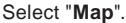
or



Press the " **MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "Settings".



Select "Map".



Activate or deactivate:

- "Allow declaration of danger zones".
- "Guidance to final destination on foot"
- "Authorise sending information"

These settings must be made according to each profile.



Select "Alerts".



Activate or deactivate "Warn of danger zones".



Select this button.



Activate: **Give an audible warning**



For access to connected navigation, you have to select the option: "Authorise sending information".

The display of danger zones depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

## Declaration of "Danger zones"

To distribute information on the declaration of danger zones, you should check the option: "Allow declaration of danger zones".



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

**NAV**



Press the "**Declare a new danger zone**" button located in the upper bar of the touch screen



Select the option "**Type**" to choose the type of "danger zone".



Select the "**Speed**" option and enter it using the virtual keypad.

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to save and distribute the information.

## "Danger zones" pack updates



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**System settings**".



Select the "**System info**" tab.



Select "**View**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.



Select "**Update(s) due**".



You can download the system and map updates from the Brand's website. The update procedure can also be found on the website.

## Displaying the weather



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

**NAV**



Press this button to display the list of services.



Select "View map".



Select "Weather".



Press this button to display primary information.



Press this button to display the detailed weather information.



The temperature displayed at 6 a.m. will be the maximum temperature for the day. The temperature displayed at 6 p.m. will be the minimum temperature for the night.

## Applications

### Internet Browser



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

**APPS**

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the "**Internet Browser**" function.

Press "**Internet Browser**" to display the browser home page.



Select your country of residence.

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to save and start the browser.



Connection to the internet is via one of the network connections provided by the vehicle or the user.

## Connectivity



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

**APPS**

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the **CarPlay®**, **MirrorLink™** or **Android Auto** functions.

## Applications



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

**APPS**

Press "**Applications**" to display the applications home page.

## CarPlay® smartphone connection



As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.

All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

**i** The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications compatible with the smartphone's CarPlay® technology on the vehicle screen when the smartphone's CarPlay® function has been previously activated.

As the processes and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated.**

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



Press on "**Telephone**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

**or**

**TEL**

Or



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.  
**or**

#### **APPS**

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the CarPlay® function.



Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.



On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.

## **MirrorLink™ smartphone connection**



As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.

All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

**i** The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's MirrorLink™ technology on the vehicle screen.

The processes and standards are constantly changing. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone be unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system.**

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

**i** The **MirrorLink™** function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press  
"Applications" to display the  
primary page.

or

APPS

Press "Connectivity" to go to the MirrorLink™ function.



Press "MirrorLink™" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the MirrorLink™ function.

OK

In the process, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.  
Accept to start and complete the connection.

Once connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

## Android Auto smartphone connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.  
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

Synchronising a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's Android Auto technology on the vehicle screen. The processes and standards are constantly changing. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone be unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system**.

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

The "Android Auto" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "Applications" to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press "Connectivity" to go to the "Android Auto" function.



Press "Android Auto" to start the application in the system.

OK

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.  
Accept to start and complete the connection.

Different audio sources remain accessible in the margin of the Android Auto display, using touch buttons in the upper bar.  
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

**i** In Android Auto mode, the function to display the rolling menus display by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers is deactivated.

**i** There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

## Bluetooth connection®

**!** As a safety measure and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

**i** Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

### Procedure from the telephone



Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

**!** To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

### Procedure from the system



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

**APPS**

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Press **"Bluetooth connection"**.



Select **"Search"**.  
The list of telephones detected is displayed.

**i** If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function in your telephone.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

**i** Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

## Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- **"Telephone"** (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- **"Streaming"** (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- **"Mobile internet data"**.

 The "Mobile internet data" profile must be activated for connected navigation (where the vehicle does not have "Emergency and assistance call" services), having first activated sharing of this connection on your smartphone.



Select one or more profiles.

**OK**

Press "OK" to confirm.

## Wi-Fi connection

Network connection by the smartphone's Wi-Fi.



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

**APPS**

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "Wi-Fi network connection".

**WIFI**



Select the "**Secured**" or "**Not secured**" or "**Stored**" tab.



Select a network.



Using the virtual keypad, enter the "**Key**" for the Wi-Fi network and the "**Password**".

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to start the connection.



The Wi-Fi connection and the sharing of the Wi-Fi connection are exclusive.

## Wi-Fi connection sharing

Creation of a local Wi-Fi network by the system.



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

**APPS**

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "Share Wi-Fi connection".

Select the "**Activation**" tab to activate or deactivate sharing of the Wi-Fi connection.

And/Or

Select the "**Settings**" tab to change the name of the system network and the password.

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



To protect against unauthorised access and make your systems as secure as possible, the use of a complex security code or password is recommended.

## Managing connections



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

**APPS**

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Manage connection**".

With this function you can view the access to connected services, the availability of connected services and modify the connection mode.

# Radio

## Selecting a station



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

**MEDIA**

Press "**Frequency**".



Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or



Move the cursor for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

**MEDIA**

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio stations**" in the secondary page.

Press "**Frequency**".



Enter the values using the virtual keypad.  
First enter the units then click on the decimals zone to enter the figures after the decimal point.

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.

The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

## Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.  
(refer to the corresponding section)

Press "**Presets**".



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

## Activating/Deactivating RDS



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

**MEDIA**

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".



Activate/Deactivate "**Station follow**".

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

## Displaying text information

 The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

### MEDIA

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".

Activate/Deactivate "**Display radio text**".

**OK** Press "**OK**" to confirm.

## Playing TA messages

 The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

Select "**Announcements**".

Activate/Deactivate "**Traffic announcement**".

**OK** Press "**OK**" to confirm.

## DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

## Terrestrial Digital Radio

 Digital radio provides higher quality reception. The different "multiplex/ensemble" services offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

### MEDIA



Select the audio source.

Press "**Band**" to select the "**DAB**" waveband.

## DAB-FM auto tracking

 "DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.

When the digital radio signal is poor, "DAB-FM tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding FM analogue station (if there is one).



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

### MEDIA

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "Radio settings".

Select "General".

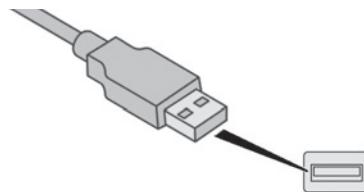
Activate/Deactivate "**Station follow**".

**OK** Press "OK".

**i** If "DAB-FM tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to FM analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume. Once the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

**!** If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on FM ("DAB-FM" option greyed out), or "DAB-FM tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

## Media USB port



Insert the USB memory stick in the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

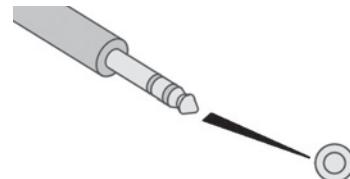
**!** To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time. The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

## Auxiliary socket (AUX)

(depending on model/depending on equipment)



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system. Operation of controls is via the portable device.

## CD player

(depending on model/depending on equipment)

Insert the CD in the player.

## Selecting the source



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

### MEDIA



Select "**Source**".

Choose the source.

## Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated; first adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).

Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.

Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.



Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.

## Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.



The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audiobooks/podcasts).

The default classification used is by artists. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

## Information and advice

**!** The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.

Device management is done by the audio system controls.

Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.



**!** To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wma", ".aac", ".flac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode. No other file types ("mp4", etc.) can be read. Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.

The sampling rates supported are 32, 44 and 48 kHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using special characters (e.g. " " ? . ; ü) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

 It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device be used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet if possible when burning the CD.

If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same burning standard is always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

## Telephone

### Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

 As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

 Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

### Procedure from the telephone



Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

 To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

### Procedure from the system



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

**TEL**



Press "**Bluetooth search**".

Or



Select "**Search**".  
The list of telephones detected is displayed.



If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function in your telephone.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

### Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Mobile internet data**".

 Activation of the profile; "**Mobile internet data**" is obligatory for connected navigation having first activated sharing of this connection on your smartphone.

 Select one or more profiles.

**OK** Press "**OK**" to confirm.

 Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

## Automatic reconnection

 On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the connection is established without any action on your part (Bluetooth activated).

## To modify the connection profile:

 Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

**TEL**

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "details" button.



Select one or more profiles.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

 The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.

 The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check the instructions for your telephone and with your service provider for the services to which you have access.

 The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

## Managing paired telephones

 This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

**TEL**

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it. Press again to connect it.

## Deleting a telephone



Select the basket at top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.



Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

## Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



**SRC** Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.

And

Make a long press



**SRC** on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.

Or

Select "End call".



## Making a call

! Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.  
Park the vehicle.  
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

## Calling a new number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

**TEL**



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.



Press "Call" to start the call.

## Calling a contact



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

**TEL**



Or make a long press



**SRC** on the steering mounted **PHONE** button.

Select "Contact".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Select "Call".

## Calling a recently used number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

**TEL**

Or



Make a long press



**SRC** on the steering mounted button.

Select "Calls".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

 It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

## Managing contacts/entries



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

**TEL**

Select "**Contact**".



Select "**Create**" to add a new contact.

In the "**Telephone**" tab, enter the telephone numbers for the contact.

In the "**Address**" tab, enter the addresses for the contact.

In the "**Email**" tab, enter the email addresses for the contact.

 The "**Email**" function allows email addresses to be entered for a contact, but the system is not able to send emails.

## Managing messages



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

**TEL**

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**All**" or "**Sent**" or "**Incoming**" tab.



Select the detail of the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Answer**" to send a quick message stored in the system.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.



Press "**Play**" to hear the message.

 Access to "**Messages**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.

Depending on the smartphone, access to your messages or email may be slow.

 The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used.

Check in the manual for your smartphone and with your service provider for the services available to you.

## Managing quick messages



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

**TEL**

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Quick messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "Delayed" or "My arrival" or "Not available" or "Other" tab with the possibility of creating new messages.



Press "Create" to write a new message.



Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "Transfer" to select the addressee(s).



Press "Play" to start playing the message.

## Managing email



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

**TEL**

Press the **OPTIONS** button to go to the secondary page.



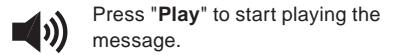
Select "**Email**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "Incoming" or "Sent" or "Not read" tab.



Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "Play" to start playing the message.



Access to "**Email**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.

## Settings

### Audio settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

#### SETUP



Select "**Audio settings**".

Select "**Ambience**".

Or

"**Position**".

Or

"**Sound**".

Or

"**Voice**".

Or

"**Ringtone**".

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to save the settings.



The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys® system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle. Available only with the front and rear speakers configuration.



The **Ambience** (6 optional ambiences) and **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** audio settings are different and independent for each audio source.

Activate or deactivate "**Loudness**".

The settings for "**Position**" (All passengers, Driver and Front only) are common to all sources.

Activate or deactivate "**Touch tones**",

"**Volume linked to speed**" and "**Auxiliary input**".



Onboard audio: Arkamys® Sound Staging optimises the balance/distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

## Profile settings

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, changes to settings must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

### SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Setting of the profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**" or "**Profile 2**" or "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Press this button to add a photograph to the profile.



Insert a USB memory stick containing the photograph in the USB port.  
Select the photograph.



Press "**OK**" to accept the transfer of the photograph.



Press "**OK**" again to save the settings.



The location for the photograph is square; the system reshapes the original photograph if in another format.



Press this button to initialise the profile selected.



Initialisation of the profile selected activates the English language by default.

Select a "**Profile**" (1 or 2 or 3) to associate the "**Audio settings**" with it.



Select "**Audio settings**".

Select "**Ambience**".

Or

"**Balance**".

Or

"**Sound**".

Or

"**Voice**".

Or

"**Ringtone**".



Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

## Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

### SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Screen configuration**".

Select "**Animation**".



Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".

Select "**Brightness**".

Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel.

 Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

## SETUP

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.

 Select "**System settings**".

Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Select "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.

 Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default.

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.

## Selecting the language

 Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

## SETUP

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.

 Select "**Languages**" to change the language.

## Setting the date

 Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

## SETUP

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.

 Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Date**".

 Press on this button to define the date.

 Press "**OK**" to confirm.

 Select the display format of the date.

 Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS synchronisation" is deactivated.

The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

## Setting the time

 Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

## SETUP

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.

 Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Time**".

 Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.

**OK** Press "OK" to confirm.

 Press this button to define the time zone.

 Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).

 Activate or deactivate synchronisation with GPS (UTC).

**OK** Press "OK" to confirm.

 The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on country).

## Colour schemes

 As a safety measure, the procedure for changing the colour scheme is only possible when the **vehicle is stationary**.

 Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

**SETUP**

Select "Colour schemes".



 Select a colour scheme in the list then press "OK" to confirm.

 Every time the colour scheme is changed, the system restarts, temporarily displaying a black screen.

## Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

## Navigation

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The guidance criteria may be in conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll road).	Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
The audible warning of "Danger zones" does not work.	The audible warning is not active or the volume is too low.	Activate the audible warning in the "Navigation" menu and check the voice volume in the audio settings.
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select the setting for the "Traffic info" function in the list of route settings (Without, Manual or Automatic).
I receive a "Danger zone" alert which is not on my route.	When not navigating, the system announces all "Danger zones" positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for "Danger zones" located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to see the exact position of the "Danger zone". Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than navigation instructions or to reduce the time for the announcement.
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways, etc.) are listed for the traffic information.	This is perfectly normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.

The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel, etc.) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This behaviour is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.
My navigation is no longer connected.	During start-up and in certain geographical areas, the connection may be unavailable.	Check that the connected services are activated (settings, contract).

## Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a dealer.

I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received. The name of the radio station changes.	The station is not received or has changed its name in the list. Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets these details as the station name.	Press on the "Update list" button in the "Radio stations" secondary menu.
---	--	---

## Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
The CD is ejected every time or is not played.	The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format not recognised by the audio system. The CD has been recorded in a format that is not compatible with the player (udf, etc.). The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.	Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged. Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "AUDIO" section. The audio system CD does not read DVDs. Due to poor quality, certain burned CDs will not be read by the audio system.

There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.	Upon insertion of a new media, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.	This is perfectly normal.
The CD sound is of poor quality.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (bass, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.	Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.
Some information characters in the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.	The connected device does not automatically launch playback.	Start playback from the device.
Names of tracks and playing time are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

## Telephone

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone has Bluetooth switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone on the Brand's website (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The sound depends on both the system and the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, etc.).
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronising contacts are synchronising the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronisations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the telephone directory display settings.
The system does not receive SMS.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	

## Settings

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
When changing the setting of treble and bass, the ambience setting is deselected. When changing the ambience setting, the treble and bass settings are reset.	The selection of an ambience setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice versa.	Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected. When changing the distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice versa.	Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. It is recommended that the audio settings (Bass; Treble; Balance) be adjusted to the middle position, select the "None" musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.	Start then vehicle's engine to increase the charge of the battery.
The date and time cannot be set.	Setting of the date and time is only available if the synchronisation with the satellites is deactivated.	Settings menu/Options/Time-Date setting. Select the "Time" tab and deactivate the "GPS synchronisation" (UTC).

## A

Accessories .....	68
Active City Brake.....	112-113
AdBlue®.....	17, 21, 136-137
Additive, Diesel .....	15
Adjusting headlamps .....	64
Adjusting head restraints .....	45
Adjusting seats.....	44
Adjusting the air distribution .....	50-52
Adjusting the air flow.....	50-52
Adjusting the date .....	33, 17, 31
Adjusting the height and reach of the steering wheel .....	43
Adjusting the seat belt height .....	74
Adjusting the temperature .....	50-52
Adjusting the time .....	33, 17, 31
Advice on care and maintenance .....	130
Advice on driving .....	92-93
Airbags .....	14, 76, 78
Airbags, curtain.....	78
Airbags, front.....	77-78
Airbags, lateral.....	77-78
Air conditioning .....	6, 48, 49
Air conditioning, automatic .....	50-52
Air conditioning, manual .....	52
Air intake .....	50-52
Air vents .....	47-48
Alarm.....	34, 39-41
Anti-lock braking system (ABS).....	71
Anti-slip regulation (ASR) .....	13, 71-72
Anti-theft / Immobiliser.....	35
Apple CarPlay connection .....	12, 16
Armrest, front .....	55
Assistance call .....	69-70
Assistance, emergency braking .....	71
Audio streaming (Bluetooth) .....	9, 24

## B

Battery.....	134, 157-158, 160-161
Battery, charging.....	158-160
Battery, remote control .....	37-38
Blind, panoramic sunroof .....	59
BlueHDi .....	21, 136, 140
Bluetooth (hands-free) .....	13-14, 25-26
Bluetooth (telephone).....	13-15, 25-27
Bonnet .....	130-131
Boot .....	39, 56
Brake discs .....	96, 135-136
Brake lamps .....	151
Brakes .....	11, 96, 135-136
Braking assistance system .....	71
Brightness .....	16
Bulbs .....	149
Bulbs (changing) .....	149, 151

## C

Cable, audio .....	23
Cable, Jack .....	23
Capacity, fuel tank .....	123
CD .....	9, 23-24
CD, MP3.....	9, 23-24
Central locking .....	34-35, 38
Changing a bulb .....	149, 151
Changing a fuse .....	152-156
Changing a wheel .....	144-145
Changing a wiper blade .....	66-67
Changing the remote control battery .....	37-38
Checking the engine oil level .....	20-21
Checking the levels .....	132-133
Checking tyre pressures (using the kit) .....	140-142
Checks .....	96, 131, 134-136
Checks, routine .....	96, 134-136
Child lock .....	91
Children .....	85-88
Children (safety) .....	91
Child seats .....	75, 79-80, 84-85, 90
Child seats, conventional .....	84

## D

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) – Digital radio .....	8, 22
Date (setting) .....	33, 17, 31
Daytime running lamps .....	62
Daytime running lamps, LED .....	62, 149
Deactivating the passenger airbag .....	77, 81
Defrosting .....	52-53
Demisting .....	52-53
Dials and gauges .....	8-9
Dimensions .....	168
Dipstick .....	20-21, 132-133
Direction indicators .....	61-62, 149, 151
Display screen, instrument panel .....	8-9, 102
Door pockets .....	53
Doors .....	36
Driving economically .....	6
Dynamic stability control (DSC) .....	13, 71-73

## E

Eco-driving (advice)	6
Economy mode	130
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)	71
Emergency braking assistance (EBA)	71
Emergency call	69-70
Emissions control system, SCR	136
Energy economy mode	130
Engine compartment	131
Engine, Diesel	13, 122, 131, 140, 166-167
Engine, petrol	122, 131, 164-165
Engines	163-167
Engine self-diagnosis	15
Environment	6, 38

## F

Filling the AdBlue® tank	137
Filling the fuel tank	122-124
Filter, air	134
Filter, oil	134
Filter, particle	134
Filter, passenger compartment	48, 134
Fitting a wheel	146-148
Fitting roof bars	129-130
Fittings, boot	56
Fittings, interior	53-54
Flap, fuel filler	123-124
Foglamp, rear	17, 60-61, 151-152
Foglamps, front	60-61, 64, 149, 151
Folding/unfolding the door mirrors	44
Frequency (radio)	21-22
Fuel	6, 122
Fuel consumption	6, 27
Fuel tank	123-124
Fusebox, dashboard	152-156
Fusebox, engine compartment	152-156
Fuses	152-156

## G

Gauge, fuel	123
Gearbox, automatic	6, 99-102, 135, 158
Gearbox, electronic	6, 55
.....	97-99, 104-106, 135, 158
Gearbox, manual	6, 96, 104-106, 135
Gear efficiency indicator	102
Gear lever	6
Gear lever, electronic gearbox	97-99, 135
Gear lever, manual gearbox	96
Glove box	54
G.P.S.	12
Grip control	73

## H

Hazard warning lamps	57-58, 68-69
Hazard warning lamps, automatic operation	69
Headlamps, automatic illumination	60, 63
Headlamps, dipped beam	60, 150
Headlamps, halogen	149
Headlamps, main beam	18, 60, 149-150
Head restraints, front	45
Head restraints, rear	47
Heating	6
Hill start assist	103-104
Horn	69

## I

Identification, vehicle	168
Ignition	95, 28
Ignition switch	93, 95
Immobiliser, electronic	94-95
Indicator, AdBlue® range	21
Indicator, coolant temperature	20
Indicator, engine oil level	20-21, 133
Indicators, direction	61-62, 149

Inflating tyres	135
Inflating tyres (using the kit)	140-142
Instrument panels	8-9
Internet browser	16
ISOFIX	87
ISOFIX mountings	86

Jack	144-145, 23
Jump starting	158

Key	34-35
Key with remote control	34, 94-95
Kit, hands-free	13-14, 25-26
Kit, temporary puncture repair	140-142

Labels, identification	168
Lamps, parking	62
LEDs – Light-emitting diodes	149
Level, AdBlue®	134
Level, brake fluid	133
Level, Diesel additive	134
Level, engine coolant	20, 133
Level, engine oil	20-21, 132-133
Levels and checks	131-133
Level, screenwash fluid	65, 133
Light-emitting diodes – LEDs	149
Lighting, ambient	58-59
Lighting, cornering	64
Lighting dimmer	24

Lighting, directional	64
Lighting, guide-me home	35, 63-64
Lighting, interior	58-59
Loading	6, 129
Load reduction mode	130
Locating your vehicle	35
Locking	34-35
Locking the boot	39
Locking the doors	39
Low fuel level	123
Luggage retaining strap	56

**M**

Maintenance (advice)	130
Maintenance, routine	6
Map reading lamps	58
Markings, identification	168
Mat	54
Menu	12
Menus (audio)	4-5, 3-5
Messages	28
Messages, quick	28
Mirror, rear view	44
Mirrors, door	43
Misfuel prevention	124
Mountings, ISOFIX	86

**N**

Net, high load retaining	56
Net, storage	56
Number plate lamps	152

Obstacle detection	114
Oil change	132-133
Oil consumption	132-133
Oil, engine	132-133
Opening the bonnet	130-131
Opening the boot	39
Opening the doors	36
Opening the fuel filler flap	123
Opening the panoramic sunroof blind	59

**O**

Radio	6-7, 9, 21, 24
Radio, digital (Digital Audio Broadcasting – DAB)	8, 22
Range	27
Range, AdBlue	21-22
RDS	7, 21-22
Rear screen, demisting	53
Recharging the battery	158-160
Recirculation, air	50-52
Reduction of electrical load	130
Regeneration of the particle filter	134

**P**

Pads, brake	96, 135-136
Paint colour code	168
Panoramic glass sunroof	59
Park Assist	116
Parking brake	95-96, 135-136
Parking sensors, audible and visual	114
Parking sensors, front	115
Parking sensors, rear	114
PEUGEOT Connect Nav	1
PEUGEOT Connect Radio	1
Plates, identification	168
Player, Apple®	9, 24
Player, MP3 CD	23
Player, USB	9, 23
Port, USB	55, 9, 23
Power steering	14
Pre-heater, Diesel	13
Pressures, tyres	135, 143, 168
Pre-tensioning seat belts	75
Priming the fuel system	140
Profiles	16, 30
Protecting children	77, 79-80, 85-88, 90
Puncture	140-142

**R**

Radio	6-7, 9, 21, 24
Radio, digital (Digital Audio Broadcasting – DAB)	8, 22
Range	27
Range, AdBlue	21-22
RDS	7, 21-22
Rear screen, demisting	53
Recharging the battery	158-160
Recirculation, air	50-52
Reduction of electrical load	130
Regeneration of the particle filter	134
Reinitialisation of the under-inflation detection system	107
Reinitialising the remote control	37-38
Reminder, key in ignition	95
Reminder, lighting on	61
Remote control	34-35
Removing a wheel	146-148
Removing the mat	54
Replacing bulbs	149, 151
Replacing fuses	152-156
Replacing the air filter	134
Replacing the oil filter	134
Replacing the passenger compartment filter	134
Reservoir, screenwash	133
Resetting the service indicator	19-20
Resetting the trip recorder	25
Reversing camera	116
Reversing lamp	151-152
Roof bars	129-130
Running out of fuel (Diesel)	140

**S**

Safety, children	77, 79-81, 85-88, 90
Screen, instrument panel	25-26
Screen menu map	12
Screenwash	65

Screenwash, rear	66
SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction)	136
Seat belts	11, 74-75, 84
Seats, front	44
Seats, heated	45-46
Seats, rear	46-47
Selector, gear	99-102
Serial number, vehicle	168
Service indicator	19
Service (warning lamp)	12
Servicing	6, 19
Settings, equipment	28
Settings, system	16, 30
Sidelamps	60, 62, 149, 151
Side repeater	151
Snow chains	108, 128-129
Socket, 12 V accessory	55
Socket, auxiliary	9, 23
Socket, Jack	55, 23
Sockets, audio	55
Speed limiter	108-109, 111-112
Starting a Diesel engine	122
Starting the engine	93, 95
Starting the vehicle	92-93, 95, 97-102
Starting using another battery	158
Station, radio	6-7, 21-22
Stay, bonnet	130-131
Steering lock	94
Steering mounted controls, audio	3, 3
Steering wheel, adjustment	43
Stopping the vehicle	92-93, 95, 97-102
Stop & Start	18, 27, 49, 53, 104-106, 116, 123, 130, 134, 158
STOP (warning lamp)	10
Storage	53-54
Stowing rings	56
Sunshine sensor	48
Switching off the engine	93, 95
Synchronising the remote control	37-38

## T

Tables of engines	164-167
Tables of fuses	152-156
Tank, fuel	123-124
Technical data	164-167
Telephone	13-15, 25-29
Temperature, coolant	10, 20
Third brake lamp	152
Three flashes (direction indicators)	61-62
Time (setting)	33, 17, 31
TMC (Traffic info)	13
Tools	144, 144-145, 152-156
Total distance recorder	25
Touch screen	26-27, 30-31, 55, 107, 1, 1
Towed loads	163
Towing another vehicle	161-162
Towing device	92-93, 124
Towing device with quickly detachable towball	125-128
Towing eye	161-162
Traction control (ASR)	13, 71-72
Traffic information (TMC)	13
Trailer	92-93, 124
Trajectory control systems	71
Triangle, warning	57-58
Trip computer	25-27
Trip distance recorder	25
Tyres	6, 135
Tyre under-inflation detection	14, 106-107, 143

## V

Ventilation	6, 47-48, 52
Voice commands	5-10

## W

Warning and indicator lamps	9
Warning lamp, airbag	14
Warning lamp, braking system	11
Warning lamp, Diesel engine pre-heater	13
Warning lamp, low fuel level	14
Warning lamp, parking brake	11
Warning lamp, Service	12
Warning lamp, STOP	10
Washing (advice)	130
Weights	163
Wheel, spare	135, 144-145
Window controls	41-42
Wiper blades (changing)	66-67
Wiper, rear	66
Wipers	18, 65-66
Wipers, automatic rain sensitive	65-66

## U

Under-inflation (detection)	106
Unlocking	34
Unlocking the boot	39
Unlocking the doors	39
Updating the date	33, 17, 31
Updating the time	33, 17, 31
USB	9, 23-24





Automobiles PEUGEOT declares, by application of the provisions of the European legislation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End of Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this legislation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this document is prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles PEUGEOT.



**PEUGEOT**

**CONDUENT** 

 **4Dconcept**

**xerox** 

AUTOMOBILES PEUGEOT - Siège Social : 7, rue Henri Sainte-Claire Deville - 92500 RUEIL-MALMAISON  
<http://www.peugeot.com>

Société anonyme au capital de 172.711.770 € - R.C.S.NANTERRE : 552 144 503

Printed in the EU  
Anglais  
03-18



[www.peugeot.com](http://www.peugeot.com)



**ANG. 18288.0040**